

# CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

AN ELEMENTARY COURSE OF EXERCISES  
IN ECCLESIASTICAL LATIN

BY *Joyce Eginton* LOWE, M.A.

*With a Note by* CANON BARRY, D.D., *and a*  
*Foreword by the* Rev. R. A. KNOX, M.A.

---

---

---

---

L O N D O N

BURNS OATES & WASHBOURNE LTD.

28 ORCHARD STREET

8-10 PATERNOSTER ROW

W. 1

E.C. 4

AND . AT . MANCHESTER . BIRMINGHAM . AND . GLASGOW

1923

*Made and Printed in Great Britain.*

## NOTE

By CANON WILLIAM BARRY

I WAS very glad to see in print this little volume, which deals with our Church Latin; and I hope that it will be widely read and studied. The want of such a help has long been evident. Classical or heathen Latin is a beautiful creation of genius; but as a language it is dead. The Latin of Catholic Christendom is a living literature; great portions of it are every day read and recited all over the world, by thousands on thousands of priests, seminarists, religious orders of men and women. But they have never been taught the grammar of it, seldom have learned by reflection how marvellous a transformation it is of a language singularly hard to refashion; yet the miracle stands perfect in their sight. Perfect I call it, and take my position close to such masters of style as Ruskin, Matthew Arnold, and J. A. Symonds, whose hearty recognition of what another has termed "baptized Latin" was enhanced by their Oxford training in the classics. Not a degenerate offspring of Roman speech in decay, but a most original and happy adaptation of the popular idiom to sacred uses, our literature of sanctuary, cloister, and the schools is a world in itself.

Consider all that lies implicit in the single name of St. Jerome's *Latin Vulgate*. Remember St. Augustine's *Confessions*, the supreme example still of religious autobiography. Call to mind the *Summa* written by St. Thomas Aquinas, with its spiritual crown, *The Imitation*. And then launch out into the Liturgies of the West, the Lives of the Saints, the Hymnologies, the inspired prayers which, with all our critical training, we cannot in any way equal. It is a world, I repeat, laying under tribute old Hebrew, Hellenistic Greek, prelude to the rise of grand Western romance and poetry, covering the middle space of more than a thousand years between classical and modern times.

The Vulgate and the Liturgy are twin portals by which we enter upon our own domain, as Christians who have received from Papal Rome the inspired word of God in the language best adapted to blend human with divine, while men move on towards peace and unity.

Let us try to know it better, that God-given mother-tongue of ours. It is holy, sublime, and simple, rich in devout associations and full of grace.

LEAMINGTON,

May Day, 1923.

## FOREWORD

BY THE REV. R. A. KNOX, M.A.

THERE is a story told in one of our Catholic Colleges (and probably in all of them) which throws, it is to be feared, a sinister light upon the easy familiarity with which altar-boys, choirs, and even congregations patter out their ecclesiastical Latin. A boy in Latin class was exhibiting a mulish ignorance as to the meaning of the word *tantus*, and the class master, with that fatal tendency we all have to adopt the method of cross-examination, was trying to get the right meaning out of him. At last in despair he suggested: "Well, you have met the words *Tantum ergo Sacramentum* before; at least you know what *that* means." At which a great light dawned upon the boy, and he said: "Oh, yes, sir, I know *that*: it means 'Down in adoration falling.'" Most Catholic schoolmasters have had similar, if not quite so poignant, experiences.

Well, we all know that it is perfectly possible to "join in" a service without understanding a word of what the priest is saying or what his assistants are answering, since devotion does not depend upon an intellectual formula. And in any case, you can get Latin-and-English-in-parallel-columns editions of all the more important services nowadays, to glut your curiosity as to the meaning of the service if you cannot restrain it. What need, then, for any but priests (in them we naturally expect a certain glibness) to go through all the old grind of terminations, concords, and sequences? Why should we try to interpret as a language what we so willingly submit to as a hieratic rigmorole? Why labour painfully over moods and tenses in the hope that we may one day catch out the curate over a false quantity? Were it not better to stick to our old *mumpsimus*? Kennedy, surely, is a yoke neither we nor our fathers were able to bear.

God forbid that we should try to make devotion into a high-brow exercise. There lives more faith in an honest *mumpsimus* than in half the gender rhymes, and probably there was more to be said than appears at first sight for the old Protestant lady who

found such comfort in the blessed word Mesopotamia. But there is this much to be said against the mumpsimizers: Church Latin was not meant to mystify. It was meant to express, not to conceal, the emotions and aspirations of the universal Church. Quite true that expression is not absolutely necessary; that a man without Latin can worship at a low Mass, just as a man with no ear for music can worship at a high Mass. But we who have no ear for music (more numerous, perhaps, than the organists imagine us to be) lose something in the way of *rapport* with our fellow-worshippers for lack of do-re-mi-fa; and surely it is equally true that the non-Latinist is apt to feel "out of it" when he hears the whole of Tenebræ without distinguishing one Latin word except (he flatters himself) "Amen." Common worship does demand a common form of expression; and it must be admitted that the English prayers we Catholics hear in Church are—well, they are not so numerous as the Latin ones.

What, then, are we all to go back to *Via Latina*? To watch Balbus building walls, and Cæsar throwing his forces across a bridge, in the hope that we may one day be able to construe *Sursum corda*? That would be going too fast. The schoolboy studies Latin in order that he may be brought into touch, according to his measure, with the life of that old, pagan civilization from which Europe sprang. To him, Balbus and Cæsar must be early intimates. To him, it is vitally important that Balbus built a wall. In building a wall, Balbus was a true Roman; he showed that capacity for engineering, that insistence on military safeguards, that love of permanent structure, that genius for nice delimitation, which are characteristic of his race. It is good that the schoolboy should know these things. It is not of the slightest importance that the altar-boy should know them.

Church Latin is a language by itself. To understand it completely you must begin at the very foundations—the foundations of Balbus' wall. But to have a working knowledge of it, a very much simpler process suffices. The characteristic idiom, which chiefly makes classical Latin hard to us, does not count for much in that Church Latin which is the *lingua franca* of Western Christendom—there is too much translation from, and reminiscence of, Greek and Hebrew originals to leave much impress of Cicero in the build of its sentences. But it is a language. Call it dog-Latin if you will; there remains a proverb which tells us that a living dog is better than a dead lion, and the difference between the dog-Latin of St. Jerome and the lion-Latin of Cicero is the difference between a living and a dead language. (I once

## A NOTE ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

THE differences between Latin and English, as outlined in the Introduction, should first be grasped intelligently, rather than memorised. Then the Exercises can be attacked immediately, and grammatical points should be mastered as they occur. If in subsequent Exercises it appears that some point has been forgotten, it can be revised with reference to the Summaries of Accidence and Syntax which follow the Exercises.

In short, the idea of this book is that the language will be learned through translating the Exercises; and the Summaries of Accidence and Syntax are for reference and revision. The teacher is recommended constantly to bear in mind the object of the course, which is not the attainment of an exact knowledge of Latin Grammar, but a real acquaintance with the language used in the Church's liturgy.

## CONTENTS

	PAGE
NOTE BY CANON WILLIAM BARRY . . . . .	iii
FOREWORD BY THE REV. R. A. KNOX, M.A. . . . .	iv
AUTHOR'S PREFACE . . . . .	vii
A NOTE ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK . . . . .	viii
<b>INTRODUCTION:</b>	
THE LATIN LANGUAGE . . . . .	1
THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN LATIN AND ENGLISH . . . . .	4
PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	5
READING ALOUD . . . . .	7
<b>EXERCISES . . . . .</b>	
SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE . . . . .	8-87
PRINCIPAL PARTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN COMMON USE . . . . .	88
SUMMARY OF SYNTAX . . . . .	106
FAMILIAR LATIN PRAYERS AND HYMNS . . . . .	113
THE MEANINGS AND DERIVATIONS OF FAMILIAR CATHOLIC TERMS . . . . .	123
VOCABULARY . . . . .	128
INDEX . . . . .	132
INDEX . . . . .	146

## CONTENTS OF EXERCISES

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Exercises.</i>	<i>Accidence.</i>	<i>Syntax.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
I.	1-2	1st Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of <b>amo</b>		8
II.	3-6	1st Declension: Singular	Use of Genitive and Dative cases	9
III.	7-8	1st Declension: Plural	Use of Ablative case	11
IV.	9-10	2nd Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of <b>moneo</b>	Use of Adjectives	12
V.	11	<b>Esse</b> : Pres. Indic.		13
VI.	12	Present Infinitive Active	Use of Prolate Infinitive	14
VII.	13	<b>Possum</b> : Pres. Indic.		14
VIII.	14	2nd Declension: Nouns in <b>-us</b> , Singular		15
IX.	15	2nd Declension: Nouns in <b>-us</b> , Plural		16
X.	16-17		Gender of Nouns	16
XI.	18-19	2nd Declension: Nouns in <b>-er</b>		18
XII.	20-21	2nd Declension: Nouns in <b>-um</b>		19
XIII.	22-25		Use of Preposi- tions	21
XIV.	26-28	3rd Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of <b>rego</b>		23
XV.	29-30	4th Conjugation: Pres. Indic. Act. of <b>audio</b>		24
XVI.	31	Imperative Mood		26
XVII.	32-34	Future Tense of <b>amo</b> , <b>moneo</b> , <b>rego</b> , <b>audio</b> , and <b>sum</b>		26
XVIII.	35-36	Imperfect Tense of <b>amo</b> , <b>moneo</b> , <b>rego</b> , <b>audio</b> , and <b>sum</b>	Use of <b>cum</b> (enclitic)	28
XIX.	37-41	3rd Declension: Mascu- line and Feminine Nouns		30
XX.	42-44	3rd Declension: Neuter Nouns		33
XXI.	45-47	3rd Declension: Adjectives		35
XXII.	48	4th Declension		38

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Exercises.</i>	<i>Accidence.</i>	<i>Syntax.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
XXIII.	49-50	5th Declension		39
XXIV.	51-52	Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses Act. of <i>amo</i> , <i>moneo</i> , and <i>esse</i>		41
XXV.	53	Future-Perfect Act. of <i>amo</i> , <i>moneo</i> , and <i>esse</i>		42
XXVI.	54	Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Act. of <i>rego</i>		43
XXVII.	55	Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Act. of <i>audio</i>		44
XXVIII.	56-57	Verbs with Irregular Perfect stems		45
XXIX.	58	Present Passive of <i>amo</i> and <i>moneo</i>		46
XXX.	59	Present Passive of <i>rego</i> and <i>audio</i>		47
XXXI.	60	Imperfect Passive (all Conj.)		48
XXXII.	61	Future Passive (all Conj.)		49
XXXIII.	62-63	Comparison of Adjectives	Use of <i>quam</i> in comparison; Ablative of Comparison	50
XXXIV.	64	Past Participles and Perfect Pass. Tense of <i>amo</i> and <i>moneo</i>		52
XXXV.	65	Future-Perf. and Pluperf. Pass. of <i>amo</i> and <i>moneo</i>		53
XXXVI.	66	Past Participles of 3rd and 4th Conjugations, and Perf., Fut. - Perf., and Pluperf. Tenses		54
XXXVII.	67-68	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns: <i>ego</i> , <i>tu</i> , <i>se</i> , and <i>is</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>id</i>	Use of Pronouns	55
XXXVIII.	69	Demonstrative Pronouns: <i>hic</i>	Use of <i>hic</i>	57
XXXIX.	70	Demonstrative Pronouns: <i>ille</i>	Use of <i>ille</i>	58
XL.	71	Present Participles	Use of Pres. Participles	59
XLI.	72	Future Participles	Use of Future Participles	59
XLII.	73	3rd Conjugation Verbs in <i>-io</i>		60
XLIII.	74		Prohibitions: <i>noli</i> with Infinitive	62

<i>Section.</i>	<i>Exercises.</i>	<i>Accidence.</i>	<i>Syntax.</i>	<i>Page.</i>
XLIV.	75	Deponent and Semi-Deponent verbs	Use of Deponent verbs	62
XLV.	76	Pres. Infinitive and Imperative Passive		64
XLVI.	77	Relative Pronoun: <i>qui</i>	Use of Relative	65
XLVII.	78	<i>eo</i> , and compounds of <i>eo</i>		66
XLVIII.	79	Pres. Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)	Use of Pres. Subj. in Jussive and Optative clauses	68
XLIX.	80	The Pronoun <i>ipse</i>	Use of <i>ipse</i>	69
L.	81-82	Imperfect Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)		70
LI.	83-84		The Ablative Absolute	72
LII.	85-86	Pluperf. Subjunctive, Act. and Pass. (all Conj.)	Use of <i>cum</i> , <i>when</i> , with Subj. Unfulfilled Conditions	73
LIII.	87-88	Perf. Subjunctive	Indirect Questions, Prohibitions, <i>ne</i> with Perf. Subj.	75
LIV.	89-90	Pres. Perf. and Fut. Infinitives, Act. and Pass.	Indirect Statement: Acc. and Infinitive Construction	77
LV.	91-92		Questions: <i>nonne</i> , <i>num</i>	79
LVI.	93		Time	80
LVII.	94		Use of Gerund	81
LVIII.	95		Use of Gerundive	82
LIX.	96		Use of Gerund and Gerundive with <i>esse</i>	83
LX.	97-100		Use of Supine	84

# CHURCH LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

## INTRODUCTION

### THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. **THERE** was once a language called **Indo-European**.<sup>\*</sup> It is now lost; but we know more or less what it was like from a comparison of the daughter languages of which Indo-European was the mother. Two of these languages were **Greek** and **Latin**, which exhibit as many curious similarities and differences as we should expect to find between two sisters.†

2. **Latin** was the language spoken by the **Latins**, who were the inhabitants of **Latium**, a province of Italy of which **Rome** was the capital. In very early days Italy was made up of several different states, which were always at war with one another; each state spoke its own dialect or *patois*. Gradually the Romans gained the upper hand in Italy, and imposed the Roman or Latin dialect upon the tribes they conquered. Thus Latin became the language of all Italy, and finally of the Roman provinces, such as Gaul, Spain, Africa, and Asia Minor.

3. In its early stages the Latin language was heavy, clumsy, and uncouth. There are some curious examples of this old Latin (it is called **prisca latinitas**) still to be seen on ancient statues, tombstones, etc. Greece was far ahead of Italy in learning and culture.

4. About the middle of the third century B.C., a Greek named **Livius Andronicus** was taken prisoner in war, and brought to Rome to act as tutor to the children of some of the leading men there. This Livius Andronicus, although he was a Greek, was the first to attempt any serious composition in Latin. He trans-

<sup>\*</sup> Also known as Indo-Germanic and Aryan.

† For example, where Latin has an initial **s**, Greek has an aspirated vowel—*e.g.*, the Latin for *six* is *sex*, the Greek, ἕξ (*hex*); *cf.* English *sextant* and *hexagon*. Again, where Latin has the voiced labial (**b**), Greek has the unvoiced (**p**): thus, Latin *sub* (*under*) = Greek ὑπό (*hupo*); Latin *expello* (*expel*) = Greek ἐκβάλλω (*ekballo*), etc.

lated several plays from the Greek, as well as the Homeric poem, the *Odyssey*.

5. Under the influence of Andronicus, a literary circle was formed at Rome, and gradually plays, poems, and prose works were produced in Latin, but always modelled on Greek originals.\* In the hands of this literary circle the Latin language soon became less clumsy and uncouth, as each new writer aimed at greater refinement and polish. But the mass of the Roman people cared more about fighting and farming than about literature, and continued to speak the old rough Latin.

6. Thus it came about that from the time of Livius Andronicus, two kinds of Latin existed side by side: the Latin of the literary and cultured classes, called **sermo urbánus**, or the language of the town, and the Latin of the ordinary people, called **sermo vulgáris**.

7. The first century B.C. is known as the **Golden Age of Latin Literature**. In this period Cicero, orator, statesman and philosopher, brought literary Latin to its zenith, and developed a prose style which became at once the envy and despair of all subsequent Latin authors. No writing, either before or since, has had such a powerful and lasting influence upon the prose style of the literature of Western Europe. The greatest poet of the Golden Age was Vergil, author of the *Aeneid*, an epic poem which became the Bible, as it were, of the pagan Romans. To this age belong, also, the poets Horace, Propertius, and Ovid, the historian Livy, and the famous general Julius Caesar, who has left us Commentaries on his two great wars.

8. The Golden Age, which ended, roughly, with the death of the Emperor Augustus in A.D. 14, gave place to what is known as the **Silver Age**. In this period the literature lacked both deep feeling and spontaneity; style developed at the expense of matter, and a brilliant artificiality replaced the purity of the Golden Age.

9. By the second century a new influence had crept in: it had become fashionable to talk Greek. Even the children of the upper classes learnt to chatter it with their Greek nurses. Thus literary Latin began to die out, though the mass of the people still continued to use the **sermo vulgáris**.

10. It is this **sermo vulgáris** which finally developed into the **different European dialects** which we now call Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Roumanian, and so on. For example, the literary Latin word for a horse is **equus**; but the common word was

\*T\* Satire was the only kind of writing which was essentially a Roman production.

**cabállus**, from which we get *caballo* in Spanish, *cavallo* in Italian and Portuguese, *cheval* in French, *cal* in Roumanian, and such derivatives as *cavalry*, *cavalier*, *cavalcade*, etc., in English. These different dialects were known as the Romance (or Roman) languages, and a romance was originally merely a story written in one of these dialects.

11. The language of the early Church was Greek; thus we find that the New Testament and the writings of the Apostolic Fathers were all in Greek and not Latin. It is in Africa that **Ecclesiastical or Church Latin** first developed. The inhabitants of that country had learnt to speak the **sermo vulgáris**, or common Latin; they did not understand Greek. About A.D. 160 **Tertullian** was born at Carthage, and was converted to Christianity about the year 197. He first wrote in Greek, but soon abandoned it in favour of Latin, in order that he might be understood by the common people. His Latin is a mixture of the literary Latin, which was taught in the schools, and the **sermo vulgáris**. He coined a great many new words.

12. By the third century a **Latin translation of the Bible** was in circulation, and St. Augustine tells us that everybody who possessed a Greek manuscript tried his hand at turning it into Latin. Thus the need for one authoritative Latin version became imperative.

13. Towards the end of the fourth century Pope Damasus commissioned **St. Jerome**, the leading scholar of the day, to bring out a new Latin edition of the Bible. This was the famous **Vulgate**, which was finished in the year 405. It marked the end of ancient Latin, and the complete establishment of mediæval Latin. From this time onward Latin became the universal language not only of the Church, but also of the State. Scholars of all nationalities could meet and converse without difficulty, since in Latin they had a common language. Thus we find, for example, Erasmus coming to England at the beginning of the sixteenth century, and finding a place at once in the friendship of such men as More, Colet, Grocin, and Charnock, though he knew no word of English.\*

14. The Latin which is taught in schools to-day is the literary Latin of the Golden Age: we call it **Classical Latin**. Ecclesiastical Latin differs from it chiefly in being much nearer to the **sermo vulgáris**, and is, therefore, not so artificially refined and polished

\* Erasmus held the living of Aldington in Kent, but resigned it in 1512 because he could not discharge the duties of a parish priest, owing to his inability to speak the language.

as the **sermo urbanus**. But by the end of the fifth century "the Latin speech that was rhetorical, unsympathetic, and hard, had been softened by emotion, lifted on the wings of prophecy, made something with a soul in it, and a sacred tongue."\*

15. The chief writers of Ecclesiastical Latin are **Tertullian** (second century), **St. Cyprian** (third century), **Lactantius** and **St. Ambrose** (fourth century), **St. Jerome**, **St. Augustine**, and **St. Leo the Great** (fifth century), the **Venerable Bede** (eighth century), **St. Bernard** (twelfth century), **St. Thomas Aquinas** (thirteenth century), and **Thomas à Kempis** (fifteenth century).

### THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN LATIN AND ENGLISH.

1. Latin is an **inflected language**. **Inflection** means bending, and most Latin words bend about at the end, and change. This alteration in the ending of a word shows us, for example, the "**case**" of a noun, pronoun, or adjective, and the voice, mood, tense, number, and person of a verb.

2. There are six cases in Latin: the **Nominative**, or subject case; the **Vocative**, or case of a person addressed; the **Accusative**, or Objective case; the **Genitive**, or Possessive case; the **Dative**, or case of the indirect object; and the **Ablative** case, which answers the questions *where? whence? and wherewith?*

3. A Latin noun, then, has different endings to show its cases. Thus **terra** is Nominative, **terram** Accusative, **terrae** Genitive, and so on. The six inflections of a noun are called the **Declension** of the noun. There are five Declensions in Latin—that is, five sorts of nouns; every noun must have one of five different sets of endings.

4. In English we show the case of a noun by its position in the sentence. Thus we know whether the dog bit the cat, or the cat bit the dog, by the position of the words "dog" and "cat" in relation to the verb. In Latin **the order does not affect the case**, which is merely shown by the ending. Thus in **terram regit rex**, *the king rules the land*, **terram** is the object, although it stands at the beginning of the sentence. (The verb usually comes at the end of a clause in Latin.)

5. Verbs also are inflected, and there are four **Conjugations**, or ways of inflecting verbs, just as there are in French. In conjugating a verb the personal pronouns "I," "thou," "he," etc.,

\* Canon Barry, "The Holy Latin Tongue," *The Dublin Review*, April, 1906.

are omitted, the ending of the verb being a sufficient indication of the person and number.

6. Latin is a **very brief and concise language**, and never makes use of unnecessary words. There is no word at all for "the" or "a," and the possessive adjectives "his," "her," "its," and "their" are very often omitted, as well as the nominative personal pronoun with the verb. In translating Latin into English it is generally necessary to use more words than there are in the original in order to bring out the full meaning. Latin has a very small vocabulary, and often one Latin word may be rendered by a number of English ones which differ very slightly in their shades of meaning. Again, in Latin there is often only one way of saying something, while in English there are several. Thus, we can say "I love," "I am loving," or "I do love," in our present tense: Latin can only say **amo**.

7. In English, if we want to emphasize any word, we usually have to underline it or print it in italics; in Latin the **emphatic word** is often placed at the beginning or end of the sentence, or next to some contrasting word. Thus, where St. Peter says to Our Lord, "Lord, dost Thou wash my feet?" to get the proper emphasis in English we have to stress "Thou" and "my." In Latin these two words are put first: "**Dómine, tu mihi lavas pedes?**"

8. The **Gender** of nouns in Latin is confusing at first, though the difficulty is more apparent when translating from English into Latin, which is beyond the scope of this book. In Latin all male people are masculine, and female feminine; but inanimate things may be masculine, feminine, or neuter. As a general rule, 1st and 5th Declension nouns are feminine, 2nd and 4th masculine, while those of the 3rd Declension vary in gender.

### PRONUNCIATION.

In the following rules the Italian method of pronunciation is adopted.

#### VOWELS.

With the exception of the diphthongs, **ae, oe, au**, every vowel is pronounced; a terminal **e** is never mute, as in English, but forms a separate syllable. The vowels in Latin may be long or short; the actual sound is the same, but the short vowel is said more lightly.

**a** is pronounced as the English **a** in **ăhă**.

**e** is pronounced as the French **é**.

**i** is pronounced as in French (English **ee** when long ; **i**, as in *pî*, when short).

**o** is pronounced as in French, when long. The short **o** in Latin has more the sound of the English **o** in **not**.

**u** is pronounced as the English **u** in **pull**, when short. When long, it is like the French **ou** (English **oo**).

#### DIPHTHONGS.

**ae** and **oe** are both pronounced as the English **ay** in **may**.

**au** is pronounced as the English **ow** in **now**.

#### CONSONANTS.

Every consonant is sounded, as in English. The consonants **k** and **w** are not used in Latin.

**c** is pronounced as **k** before **a**, **o**, **u**, **au**, and **h**.

e.g., *carus*, *cor*, *cura*, *causa*, *charta*.

**c** is pronounced as **ch** in **cherry** before **e**, **i**, **ae**, and **oe**.

e.g., *cedo*, *circum*, *caecus*, *coelum*.

**g** is pronounced as **g** in **gate** before **a**, **o**, **u**, and **au**.

e.g., *gallus*, *gomphus*, *guttur*, *gaudeo*.

**g** is pronounced as **j** in **journey** before **e**, **i**, and **ae**.

e.g., *gens*, *gigno*, *gaesum*.

**gn** is pronounced as **ni** in **union**.

e.g., *magnus*.

**j** is pronounced as **y** in **youth**.\*

e.g., *justus*.

**sc** is pronounced as **sc** in **scatter** before **a**, **o**, **u**, and **h**.

e.g., *scala*, *scōpulus*, *scutum*, *schola*.

**sc** is pronounced as **sh** in **show** before **e**, **i**, and **ae**.

e.g., *descēdo*, *scimus*, *scaena*.

**ti** is pronounced as **tsi** before **a** and **o**.

e.g., *gratia*, *laudatio*.

**h** is not sounded.

N.B.—An accent (´) is placed on all the Latin words of more than three syllables in this book, to show where to lay the stress of the voice. In the Vocabulary at the end the actual quantity

\* Some editors of Latin texts prefer to eliminate the letter **j**, and to replace it by **i**. For the sake of clearness **j** is used throughout this book.

is marked when the vowel is long : *e.g.*, **Māter**. The Ablative case of the 1st Declension is distinguished from the Nominative by a circumflex accent: *e.g.*, **aquā̄**. The final **-e** of Adverbs, when long, is so marked: *e.g.*, **dignē**.

### READING ALOUD.

It is an excellent practice, especially at the beginning of the course, frequently to read aloud passages of some length from the Missal, the Breviary, the "Imitation," or the New Testament. The meaning of the passages may not be understood; but reading aloud is the best way of familiarising pupils with the pronunciation and spelling of Latin; and, further, they gain from it an indefinable insight into the beauty, spirit, and construction of the language. Great care should be taken to ensure correct pronunciation, accent, and quantity.

## SECTION I.

### First Conjugation : AMARE, to love.

#### Present Tense.

<b>amo</b>	I love, <i>or</i> I am loving	<b>non amo</b>	I do not love
<b>amas*</b>	thou lovest, <i>or</i> thou art loving	<b>non amas</b>	thou dost not love
<b>amat</b>	he loves, <i>or</i> he is loving	<b>non amat</b>	he does not love
<b>amámus</b>	we love, <i>or</i> we are loving	<b>non amámus</b>	we do not love
<b>amátis</b>	you love, <i>or</i> you are loving	<b>non amátis</b>	you do not love
<b>amant</b>	they love, <i>or</i> they are loving	<b>non amant</b>	they do not love

## EXERCISE I.

### VOCABULARY.

laudáre, to praise.

adoráre, to adore.

culpáre, to blame.

speráre, to hope.

liberáre, to deliver.

oráre, to pray.

vocáre, to call.

regnáre, to reign.

1. Laudámus. 2. Vocátis. 3. Líberat. 4. Non culpat.  
 5. Orámus. 6. Culpas. 7. Non laudo. 8. Sperátis. 9. Vo-  
 cámus. 10. Regnat. 11. Orátis. 12. Adóras. 13. Liberátis.  
 14. Non laudat. 15. Spero. 16. Regnant. 17. Non culpámus.  
 18. Non orat. 19. Adórant. 20. Non sperant.

## EXERCISE II.

### VOCABULARY.

regína, a queen.

fémína, a woman.

ancílla, a handmaid.

puélla, a girl.

1. Regína laudat. 2. Ancílla adórat. 3. Puélla culpat. 4. Fé-  
 mína sperat. 5. Regína non sperat. 6. Fémína non vocat.  
 7. Regína regnat. 8. Fémína culpat. 9. Ancílla orat. 10. Regína  
 líberat. 11. Regnámus. 12. Ancílla non laudat. 13. Liberámus.  
 14. Culpant. 15. Puélla vocat. 16. Adórant. 17. Fémína non  
 sperat. 18. Culpátis. 19. Non sperámus. 20. Puélla orat.

\* The 2nd person singular is always used when addressing one person, no matter what his rank.

## SECTION II.

## First Declension : Singular.

## ROSA, a rose.

Nominative case .. ..	rosa	a (or the) rose ( <i>subject</i> )
Vocative case .. ..	rosa	O rose
Accusative case .. ..	rosam	a rose ( <i>object</i> )
Genitive case .. ..	rosae	of a rose
Dative case .. ..	rosae	to or for a rose
Ablative case .. ..	rosâ	by, with, or from a rose

## EXERCISE III.

## VOCABULARY.

fília, a daughter.

Mária, Mary.

pátria, native land.

et, and.

vita, life.

epístola,\* a letter.

saepe (*adverb*), often.semper (*adverb*), always.

1. Regina laudat epistolam. 2. Regina non amat feminam.  
 3. Ancilla amat puellam. 4. Regina liberat puellam. 5. Puella amat Mariam. 6. Semper amamus patriam. 7. Filia amat feminam. 8. Ancilla et puella laudant reginam. 9. Semper amamus vitam. 10. Regina saepe laudat ancillam. 11. Puella saepe orat. 12. Ancilla non laudat epistolam. 13. Femina semper laudat filiam. 14. Puella et femina amant rosam. 15. Regina liberat puellam et ancillam. 16. Laudamus reginam. 17. Regina saepe orat. 18. Adoramus. 19. Femina amat patriam. 20. Regina saepe laudat feminam et puellam.

## EXERCISE IV.

## VOCABULARY.

quis ? who ?

cur ? why ?

quia, because.

sed, but.

1. Non amo reginam quia culpam puellam. 2. Quis amat vitam ? 3. Cur culpam ancillam ? 4. Laudo puellam quia amat patriam. 5. Amamus feminam et puellam. 6. Quis culpam ancillam ? 7. Regina culpam puellam. 8. Culpamus ancillam sed laudamus puellam. 9. Femina non amat reginam quia culpam filiam. 10. Cur non laudas epistolam ? 11. Laudamus puellam

\* Sometimes, but not so correctly, written epístola.

et ancillam. 12. Fémína et filia orant. 13. Semper laudámus Mariám. 14. Cur non laudas puéllam? 15. Regína liberat puéllam et ancillam. 16. Cur non sperant? 17. Semper adorámus. 18. Quis amat rosam? 19. Regína regnat. 20. Saepe laudámus ancillam.

## EXERCISE V.

(Genitive Case.)

## VOCABULARY.

terra, the earth, land.	hora, an hour.
cujus? whose?	stella, a star.
glória, glory.	coróna, a crown.

1. Hora vitae. 2. Fíliá regínae. 3. Glória Mariáe. 4. Ancilla regínae. 5. Fíliá féminae amat ancillam regínae. 6. Cujus epístolam laudas? 7. Laudo epístolam puéllae, sed culpo epístolam ancillae. 8. Laudámus glóriam stellae. 9. Quis non laudat vitam Mariáe? 10. Fíliá regínae liberat féminam. 11. Non laudo fíliam féminae. 12. Cur culpas ancillam regínae? 13. Quis vitam regínae laudat? 14. Puélla laudat corónam regínae. 15. Non amámus féminam et ancillam. 16. Non saepe culpámus ancillam. 17. Quis culpat puéllam? 18. Regína liberat fíliam féminae. 19. Semper laudámus rosam. 20. Fémína et puélla sperant.

## EXERCISE VI.

(Dative Case.)

## VOCABULARY.

monstráre, to point out.	dare, to give.
narráre, to narrate, tell.	fábula, a story.

1. Fémína narrat fábulam filiae. 2. Puélla dat rosam regínae. 3. Ancilla monstrat stellam féminae. 4. Damus corónam regínae. 5. Regína dat epístolam puéllae. 6. Fíliá regínae narrat fábulam puéllae. 7. Regína dat epístolam féminae. 8. Cuius vitam laudas? Semper laudo vitam Mariáe. 9. Fémina monstrat stellam filiae regínae. 10. Regína semper laudat fíliam féminae, sed saepe culpat ancillam. 11. Semper laudámus glóriam Mariáe. 12. Amo regínam quia laudat fíliam. 13. Cujus fábulam laudas? 14. Laudo fábulam féminae. 15. Quis monstrat stellam puéllae? 16. Cujus epístolam das ancillae? 17. Cur non speras? 18. Damus corónam regínae. 19. Regína saepe orat. 20. Non culpo puéllam.

## SECTION III.

## First Declension : Plural.

Nominative case .. ..	rosae	roses ( <i>subject</i> )
Vocative case .. ..	rosae	O roses
Accusative case .. ..	rosas	roses ( <i>object</i> )
Genitive case .. ..	rosárum	of roses
Dative case .. ..	rosis	to or for roses
Ablative case .. ..	rosis	by, with, or from roses

## EXERCISE VII.

## VOCABULARY.

ornáre, to adorn.            nuntiáre, to announce.  
 via, a way, road.            aqua, water.

N.B.—In Latin the verb is often placed at the end of a sentence.

1. Puéllae regínam amant. 2. Ancillae stellas monstrant.  
 3. Puéllae laudant filias regínae. 4. Quis monstrat stellas regínae? 5. Ornámus filiam regínae. 6. Fíliae regínae fábulas narrant. 7. Saepe laudámus filias féminae. 8. Puéllae vitam amant. 9. Puéllae dant rosas féminis. 10. Ancillae nuntiant. 11. Ancillae regínarum stellas puéllis monstrant. 12. Fábulas saepe narrámus. 13. Regína rosas féminae dat. 14. Semper laudámus glóriam Maríae. 15. Puéllae monstrant aquam et terram filiae regínae. 16. Quis culpát epístolas puellárum? 17. Semper amámus pátriam. 18. Puélla narrat fábulam féminis. 19. Regína laudat rosas puellárum. 20. Fémina monstrat viam puéllis.

## EXERCISE VIII.

## (Ablative Case.)

## VOCABULARY.

adjuváre, to help.            pecúnia, money.

1. Fíliae ornant regínam rosis. 2. Fémina ádjuvat puéllam pecúniâ. 3. Fémina pecúniam ancillae dat. 4. Puélla monstrat viam féminae. 5. Ancillae ornant filias regínae coronâ et rosis. 6. Fémina monstrat aquam et terram puéllis. 7. Regína dat pecúniam ancillis. 8. Fémina puéllam pecúniâ saepe ádjuvat.

9. Cujus rosas laudas? 10. Quis ádjuvat puéllam? 11. Ancíllae narrant fábulas puéllis. 12. Fíliá regínae líberat ancíllam pecúniá. 13. Quis ádjuvat féminam? 14. Quis monstrat viam féminis? 15. Laudámus corónam stellárum. 16. Epístolam puéllae culpámus, sed fábulam ancíllae laudámus. 17. Puéllae monstrant stellas et aquas. 18. Laudámus horas vitae. 19. Quis non laudat epístolas filiárum regínae? 20. Fíliae féminae saepe culpant epístolas filiárum regínae.

### SECTION IV.

Second Conjugation : **MONÉRE**, to advise, or warn.

Present Tense.

<b>moneo</b>	I advise (or am advising)
<b>mones</b>	thou advisest
<b>monet</b>	he advises
<b>monémus</b>	we advise
<b>monétis</b>	you advise
<b>monent</b>	they advise

### EXERCISE IX.

VOCABULARY.

**tenére**, to hold.

**habére**, to have.

**timére**, to fear.

**docére**, to teach.

**vidére**, to see.

**terrére**, to terrify.

1. Puélla tenet epístolam. 2. Fíliae regínae docent ancíllas. 3. Non vídeo terram, sed vídeo aquam et stellas. 4. Ancíllae regínam timent. 5. Habémus rosas et corónas. 6. María habet corónam stellárum. 7. Quis videt viam? 8. Regína terret ancíllas et puéllas. 9. Tenémus epístolam regínae. 10. Quis habet corónam? 11. Féminae terrent puéllas. 12. Regínam saepe timémus. 13. Ancílla monstrat viam regínae. 14. Regína monet féminam. 15. Quis docet puéllam? 16. Fíliá regínae docet puéllam. 17. Regínam et filiam saepe vidémus. 18. Regína habet corónam rosárum. 19. Fíliae regínae terrent puéllas et ancíllas. 20. Quis videt regínam?

## EXERCISE X.

## VOCABULARY.

magna, great.	longa, long.
bona, good.	parva, small.
mala, bad.	laeta, joyful, glad.

N.B.—In Latin the Adjective is usually placed after the noun, and it must agree with it in number, gender, and case.

1. Regína magna puéllas bonas laudat. 2. Puéllae parvae timent regínam magnam. 3. Fémina bona docet ancíllam parvam. 4. Non habémus vitam longam. 5. Fémina mala terret puéllas parvas. 6. Regína magna laudat puéllas laetas. 7. Quis laudat puéllas malas? 8. Fémina monstrat viam longam. 9. Non timeo regínam magnam. 10. Fémina bona docet filias parvas regínae magnae. 11. Ancíllae laetae pátriam vident. 12. Fémina narrat fábulam longam. 13. Puélla parva stellas monstrat. 14. Ancíllae bonae orant et sperant. 15. Regína bona puéllas parvas pecúniâ ádjuvat. 16. Puéllae parvae ornant regínam magnam rosis. 17. Quis liberat ancíllam bonam? 18. Quis non laudat puéllas bonas? 19. Docémus filias parvas regínae magnae. 20. Puéllae laetae regínam magnam vident.

## SECTION V.

## The Verb ESSE, to be.

## Present Tense.

sum	I am	sumus	we are
es	thou art	estis	you are
est	he is	sunt	they are

N.B.—The verb *to be* is followed by the Nominative Case in Latin, as in English.

## EXERCISE XI.

1. Regína est bona. 2. Regínae sunt magnae. 3. Puéllae sunt parvae. 4. Féminae sunt bonae. 5. Ancílla est laeta. 6. Sumus ancíllae regínae. 7. Quis dat rosam regínae? 8. Puéllae sunt ancíllae Maríaee. 9. Bona et laeta es. 10. Vita non est longa. 11. Pátria est magna. 12. Glória Maríaee est magna. 13. Horae vitae non sunt longae. 14. Fémina bona stellas puéllis parvis monstrat. 15. Via est longa et aquae sunt magnae.

16. Filiae reginae sunt ancillae Mariae. 17. Estis bonae et laetae. 18. Non timemus reginam magnam. 19. Puella est bona sed parva. 20. Quis docet filiam reginae ?

## SECTION VI.

### The Use of the Present Infinitive.

The Present Infinitive is used in Latin, as in English, to complete the sense of a verb: *e.g.*, **debemus orare**, *we ought to pray*.

## EXERCISE XII.

### VOCABULARY.

**audere**, to dare.                      **debere**, ought.  
**jubere**, to order.                      **vult**, he (*or she*) wishes.

1. Debemus sperare. 2. Regina jubet ancillas orare. 3. Quis non audet sperare ? 4. Regina vult videre ancillas. 5. Puellae non audent docere filias reginae. 6. Cur times videre reginam ? 7. Debemus amare reginam. 8. Regina debet monere feminam. 9. Femina bona non audet culpae reginam magnam. 10. Puella vult stellas videre. 11. Femina jubet ancillam narrare fabulam. 12. Femina vult monstrare viam reginae. 13. Cur timetis adjuvare ancillam ? 14. Puella parva aquam timet. 15. Femina mala terret filias reginae. 16. Filia reginae non audet liberare ancillas. 17. Ancillae coronam reginae dant. 18. Regina jubet ancillas puellam adjuvare. 19. Puellae malae audent culpae filiam feminae. 20. Puella vult adjuvare feminam.

## SECTION VII.

### The Verb POSSE, to be able.

Posse is a compound of **esse**, *to be*, and was originally written **potesse**, being made up of the adjective **potis**, *able*, and **esse**, *to be*: hence *to be able*. Wherever the verb **esse** begins with an **s**, as in **sum**, **pos-** is written instead of **pot-**: *e.g.*, **possum**, not **potsum**. **Posse** is followed by the Infinitive.

### Present Tense.

possum	póssumus
potes	potéstis
potest	possunt

## EXERCISE XIII.

1. Non possum vidére. 2. Potes oráre. 3. Quis potest monére féminam? 4. Non possum fábulas narráre. 5. Quis potest vidére terram? 6. Regína magna ancillas liberáre potest. 7. Fémina non potest vocáre puéllas. 8. Cur culpas puéllas? 9. Culpo puéllas quia non possunt monstráre viam regínae. 10. Quis potest ancillam liberáre? 11. Stellas vidére póssumus. 12. Quis non potest speráre? 13. Fília féminae non potest narráre fábulas longas. 14. Fémina non potest monére puéllas. 15. Puéllae malae audent culpáre reginam. 16. Quis vocat filias regínae? 17. Regína jubet filias féminae viam monstráre. 18. Puéllae parvae non possunt adjuváre féminam. 19. Quis aquam timet? 20. Cur non potes monére féminam?

## SECTION VIII.

## Second Declension: Singular.

## ÓCULUS, an eye.

Nominative case	.. ..	óculus	an eye ( <i>subject</i> )
Vocative case	.. ..	ócule	O eye
Accusative case	.. ..	óculum	an eye ( <i>object</i> )
Genitive case	.. ..	óculi	of an eye
Dative case	.. ..	óculo	to or for an eye
Ablative case	.. ..	óculo	by, with, or from an eye

## EXERCISE XIV.

## VOCABULARY.

Dóminus, the Lord.	ángelus, an angel.
Deus, God ( <i>Vocative, Deus</i> ).	fílius, a son ( <i>Vocative, fili</i> ).
Christus, Christ.	mundus, the world.
Agnus, Lamb.	servus, a servant, slave.

1. Christum adorámus. 2. Ángelus adórat Agnum Dei. 3. Deus amat mundum. 4. Ángelus Dei núntiat Maríae. 5. Servus et ancilla Dóminum amant. 6. Fíliae regínae, ancillae Maríae, Deum adórant. 7. Fílius regínae Dóminum timet. 8. María est ancilla Dómini. 9. Deus líberat mundum. 10. Quis Deum non amat? 11. Adorámus Christum, Fílium Dei. 12. Glória Dei est magna. 13. Angelus Deum potest vidére. 14. Deum timére debémus. 15. Fílius regínae servum terret.

16. Dóminus jubet ángelum nuntiáre Mariæ. 17. Debémus amáre pátriam. 18. Christus mundum liberáre potest. 19. Christus est Fílius Dei. 20. Adorámus Agnum Dei.

## SECTION IX.

## Second Declension : Plural.

Nominative case .. ..	óculi	eyes (subject)
Vocative case .. ..	óculi	O eyes
Accusative case .. ..	óculos	eyes ( <i>object</i> )
Genitive case .. ..	oculórum	of eyes
Dative case .. ..	óculis	to or for eyes
Ablative case .. ..	óculis	by, with, or from eyes

## EXERCISE XV.

## VOCABULARY.

pópulus, people.	Apóstolus, an Apostle.
amicus, a friend.	Sanctus, a saint.
Paulus, Paul.	Petrus, Peter.

1. Petrus et Paulus sunt Sancti. 2. Pópulus Deum adórat. 3. Ángeli Deum possunt vidére. 4. Servus regíne est amicus Petri. 5. Paulus Christum adórat. 6. Petrus est Apóstolus Dómini. 7. Deus líberat pópulum. 8. Servus habet rosas et corónas. 9. Ancíllae filias regíne rosas ornant. 10. Amámus Sanctos Dei. 11. Ángeli adórant Agnum Dei. 12. Fílium regíne vidére póssumus. 13. Ángelus Dei núntiat Petro. 14. Quis est amicus servi? 15. Cur non audes fábulam narráre filio regíne? 16. Fílias parvas regíne magnae saepe vidére póssumus. 17. Deum semper amáre debémus. 18. Deus jubet pópulum oráre. 19. Ancíllae regínam vidére non possunt. 20. Terra laudat et adórat Deum.

## SECTION X.

## Gender of Nouns.

Most nouns of the 1st Declension are **Feminine** in gender, whereas those of the 2nd Declension (ending in **-us**) are **Masculine**. An Adjective qualifying a masculine noun is therefore declined like **óculus**: e.g., **magnus óculus**, a great eye; **magni óculi**, great eyes.

## EXERCISE XVI.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>sanctus</b> , holy.	<b>illumináre</b> , to enlighten.
<b>meus</b> , my.	<b>multus</b> , much ( <i>plural</i> , many).
<b>tuus</b> , thy.	<b>cantáre</b> , to sing.
<b>quem</b> ? whom ?	<b>latus</b> , broad.

1. Deus illúminat óculos meos. 2. Cur fílias tuas culpas, O fémina ? 3. Non possum vidére terram óculis meis. 4. Fília mea est ancílla Maríae. 5. Fílius meus est servus regínae. 6. Ángeli Dei sunt sancti. 7. Sancti Dei sunt laeti. 8. Ancíllae Maríae sunt laetae. 9. Ancíllas parvas óculis tuis terrére potes. 10. Quem vidétis ? Vidémus fílium regínae. 11. Deus líberat mundum et pópulum. 12. Aqua est lata et terra est magna. 13. Cur das rosas ancíllis tuis ? 14. Christus est Fílius Dei. 15. Regínam non amámus quia non est bona. 16. Fémina epístolam meam non laudat. 17. Habémus multos servos et multas ancíllas. 18. Puéllae dant multas rosas regínae magnae. 19. Saepe vidémus fílium parvum regínae magnae. 20. Vidémus aquas latas et stellas multas. 21. Quis potest cantáre ? Puella potest cantáre. 22. Servus tenet multas epístolas. 23. Quis timet aquam ? 24. Puélla parva timet aquam latam. 25. Ancíllae cantant et orant.

## EXERCISE XVII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>albus</b> , white.	<b>serváre</b> , to keep, save, preserve.
<b>lúcidus</b> , bright, clear.	<b>pulsáre</b> , to knock, knock at.
<b>quot</b> ? how many ?	<b>atque</b> , and, moreover.
<b>fámulus</b> , a servant.	<b>diléctus</b> , beloved.

1. Deus servat pópulum. 2. Aqua est lúcida. 3. Rosa est alba. 4. Via est lata et longa. 5. Agnus est albus. 6. Fámulus est diléctus. 7. Stellae sunt lúcidae. 8. Quis est fámulus regínae ? 9. Quot rosas habes ? 10. Quis pulsat portam meam ? 11. Fámulus regínae pulsat portam tuam. 12. Quot fámulos habes ? 13. Habeo multos fámulos. 14. Fília mea habet agnum album. 15. Deus servat atque illúminat mundum. 16. Regína habet corónam rosárum albárum. 17. María habet corónam stellárum lucidárum. 18. Quot stellas vidére potéstis ? 19. Non possumus vidére multas stellas. 20. Cur regínam times ? 21. Timeo regínam quia saepe culpát ancíllas. 22. Petrus est amícus diléctus pópuli. 23. Quot rosas in viis vidére potes ? 24. Non debémus pulsáre portam regínae. 25. Fámulus regínae cantáre potest. 26. Cur pulsas portam meam ? 27. Fámulus

meus servat agnos meos. 28. Aquam lúcidam vidére pòssumus. 29. Non debes terrére agnos parvos. 30. Fámuli atque ancíllae portam pulsant.

## SECTION XI.

Second Declension (*Continued*).

N.B.—A few nouns of the 2nd Declension end in **-er** instead of in **-us**. Most of them drop the “e” after the Vocative singular, and from the Accusative case onwards are declined like **óculus**. They are all Masculine in gender.

## AGER, a field.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative .. ..	ager	agri
Vocative .. ..	ager	agri
Accusative .. ..	agrum	agros
Genitive .. ..	agri	agrórum
Dative .. ..	agro	agris
Ablative .. ..	agro	agris

N.B.—Puer, a boy, keeps the “e” throughout the declension—e.g., Genitive, pueri, Dative, puero, etc.

## EXERCISE XVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

magister, a master.	minister, a servant.
liber, a book.	vir, a man ( <i>Genitive, viri</i> ).
puer, a boy.	arare, to plough.

1. Magístri púeros docent. 2. Ministri libros regínae dant. 3. Púeri agros arant. 4. Magístrum semper laudámus. 5. Púeros et puéllas saepe culpámus. 6. Ministri regínae agros latos arant. 7. Magíster librum púero dat. 8. Quis laudat librum magístri? 9. Vir fábulam longam púeris parvis saepe narrat. 10. Púeri cantant Dómino. 11. Regína habet agros latos. 12. Magíster malus púeros parvos terret. 13. Púeri tenent libros et epístolas. 14. Ángeli sunt ministri Dei. 15. Viri et féminae Dóminum laudant. 16. Ministri stellas pueris parvis monstrant. 17. Magístri vocant púeros malos. 18. Debémus arare agros regínae. 19. Púeri mali non audent culpáre magístrum. 20. Deus illúminat óculos ministrórum.

## EXERCISE XIX.

(Adjectives in -er.)

## VOCABULARY.

noster, our.  
vester, your.

pulcher, beautiful, fair.  
miser, unhappy (*feminine, misera*).

1. Regina est pulchra. 2. Viri sunt miseri. 3. Ministri nostri sunt laeti. 4. Pueri vestri sunt mali. 5. Patria nostra est pulchra. 6. Amicus noster est filius magistri. 7. Agri nostri sunt lati et pulchri. 8. Servi vestri non possunt cantare. 9. Oculi puellae sunt magni et pulchri. 10. Cur miser es? 11. Miser sum quia magister non laudat epistolam meam. 12. Maria est pulchra. 13. Non debemus culpae ministros reginae. 14. Patriam nostram semper amamus. 15. Filius reginae non potest monere servum tuum. 16. Pueros parvos saepe terret. 17. Quis terram potest videre? 18. Videmus stellas et aquas latas. 19. Servi vestri sunt miseri, sed ancillae nostrae sunt laetae. 20. Regina pulchra terret servos miseros. 21. Cur femina vocat puellas? 22. Femina vocat puellas quia malae sunt. 23. Regina vult adjuvare pueros et puellas. 24. Magister noster docet filios reginae. 25. Servi debent arare agros. 26. Non possum cantare. 27. Quis dat pecuniam parvis pueris? 28. Angeli Dei sunt boni et pulchri. 29. Servi nostri sunt amici ancillae. 30. Ministri adorant Agnum Dei.

## SECTION XII.

## Neuter Nouns of the 2nd Declension.

Neuter nouns of the 2nd Declension have the first three cases of the singular ending in **-um**, and the first three cases of the plural in **-a**, otherwise they are declined like *oculus*.

## REGNUM, a kingdom.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative .. ..	regnum	regna
Vocative .. ..	regnum	regna
Accusative .. ..	regnum	regna
Genitive .. ..	regni	regnorum
Dative .. ..	regno	regnis
Ablative .. ..	regno	regnis

## EXERCISE XX.

## VOCABULARY.

auxilium, help.  
peccátum, sin.  
saeculum, age.  
óstium, gate.

Christiánus, a Christian.  
bellum, war.  
verbum, a word.  
coelum, heaven (*plur.* coeli, coelos, etc.).

1. Saecula saeculorum. 2. Verbum Dei. 3. Regnum coeli.  
4. Auxilium Christianorum. 5. Ostium coeli. 6. Bellum timemus.  
7. Quis laudat verba reginae? 8. Peccatum non debemus amare.  
9. Feminae bellum semper timent. 10. Amicus magistri non laudat verba puerorum. 11. Ancilla vult videre ostium coeli.  
12. Coelum est regnum Dei. 13. Adoramus Verbum Dei. 14. Pueros parvos verbis tuis saepe terres.  
15. Quis epistolam tuam audent culpae? 16. Ministri verba reginae magistro nuntiant.  
17. Bella magna terrent viros et feminas. 18. Maria est auxilium Christianorum.  
19. Maria Christianos semper adjuvat. 20. Ostium coeli non possumus videre. 21. Famuli ostium pulsant.  
22. Stellas lucidas possumus videre. 23. Christiani sunt famuli Dei. 24. Bellum terret feminas. 25. Verba tua non laudamus.

## EXERCISE XXI.

## VOCABULARY.

judicare, to judge.  
me, me.  
te, thee.

periculum, danger.  
nos, we or us.  
vos, you (*subject or object*).

N.B.—The Neuter form of the Adjective ends in *-um*, and declines like *regnum*.

1. Adoramus te, Domine. 2. Liberamus vos, O servi. 3. Periculum est magnum.  
4. Maria est Regina Coeli. 5. Verba magistri sunt bona. 6. Maria est auxilium nostrum. 7. Deus iudicat peccata nostra.  
8. Deus nos semper amat. 9. Laudamus vos, quia boni estis. 10. Puellae parvae periculum timent.  
11. Pericula magna terrent pueros et viros. 12. Populum iudicare non debemus.  
13. Servi nuntiant verba reginae magistro. 14. Habemus multos servos et ministros. 15. Sanctus es, Deus.  
16. Ostium coeli est pulchrum. 17. Peccata sunt mala. 18. Servi sunt miseri quia periculum timent. 19. Quem times, O serve?  
20. Petrum et Paulum, Sanctos Dei, semper laudamus.

## SECTION XIII.

## Prepositions.

Prepositions govern either the **Accusative** or **Ablative** case, or occasionally both these cases, in Latin.

## EXERCISE XXII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>ante</b> , before (Acc.).	<b>pro</b> , for, on behalf of (Abl.).
<b>post</b> , after (Acc.).	<b>cum</b> , with (Abl.).
<b>stare</b> , to stand.	<b>pugnare</b> , to fight.

1. *María orat pro mundo.* 2. *Ángeli stant ante óstium coeli.*  
 3. *Pugnámus pro pátriâ.* 4. *Cur orátis pro filio regínae?*  
 5. *Orámus pro filio regínae quia est miser.* 6. *Stamus cum amícis nostris.* 7. *Post multas horas perículi puéllae sunt laetae.*  
 8. *Dóminus líberat nos.* 9. *Sancti orant pro mundo.* 10. *Cur non audes pugnare pro pátriâ tuâ?* 11. *Pugnámus pro amícis nostris.* 12. *Regína vocat místros et servos.* 13. *Ancillae orant pro reginâ magnâ.* 14. *Quis non potest pugnare pro pátriâ?* 15. *Servi stant ante óstia.* 16. *Post multa perícula pátriam nostram videre póssumus.* 17. *Quis pugnat cum servis?* 18. *Debémus orare pro ancillis regínae, quia míserae sunt.* 19. *Regína jubet servos pugnare pro pátriâ.* 20. *Puella vult stare cum féminâ.*

## EXERCISE XXIII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>ad</b> , to, at, towards (Acc.).	<b>in</b> , in, on (Abl.); into (Acc.).
<b>trans</b> , across (Acc.).	<b>a</b> ( <i>ab before a vowel</i> ), by, from (Abl.).
<b>jánua</b> , gate, door.	<b>ambulare</b> , to walk.

1. *Deus est in coelo.* 2. *Orámus ad Deum.* 3. *Servi sunt in agris.* 4. *Vídeo viros trans aquam.* 5. *In Deo debémus sperare.*  
 6. *María orat ad Deum pro mundo.* 7. *Ambulámus cum amícis nostris.* 8. *Stamus ante jánuam.* 9. *Sancti ámbulant in viâ Dómini.* 10. *Deus líberat nos a perículo.* 11. *María est Jánuá Coeli.\** 12. *Quem vides trans aquam?* 13. *Cuius libros laudas?* 14. *Servi míseri stant in viis.* 15. *Mínistri regínae agros latos arant.* 16. *Puéllae ámbulant in viis cum féminâ.* 17. *Quem vidétis in agris?* 18. *Vidémus filios regínae in agris.* 19. *Ambulámus ad agros.* 20. *Ambulámus ad jánuam cum amícis nostris.*

\* See page 129.

21. *Stellas lúcidas in coelis vidémus.* 22. *Quis jánuam pulsat ?*  
 23. *Fámuli servant óstium.* 24. *Quot agnos habétis in agris ?*  
 25. *Fámuli regínae agros arant.*

## EXERCISE XXIV.

N.B.—Adjectives may be used without a noun in Latin: e.g., *boni, the good*, or *good people*, *mali, the wicked*, etc. So *malum* (neuter singular) means *evil* (literally, *a bad thing*).

## VOCABULARY.

<i>inimicus</i> , an enemy.	<i>beátus</i> , blessed.
<i>justus</i> , just.	<i>ánima</i> , soul, life.
<i>ira</i> , anger.	<i>clamáre</i> , to cry.
<i>de</i> , from, concerning (Abl.).	<i>profúndum</i> , a depth.

1. *De profúndis clamámus ad te, Dómine.* 2. *Deus júdicat peccáta malórum.* 3. *Deus líberat nos a malo.* 4. *Vitae Sanctórum sunt beátæ.* 5. *Ánimæ justórum sunt in coelo.* 6. *Timémus iram Dei.* 7. *Inimíci nostri non laudant nos.* 8. *Ángeli Dei sunt beáti.* 9. *Justi ámbulant in viâ Dómini.* 10. *Deus illúminat óculos justórum.* 11. *Cur stas in viâ et oras ?* 12. *Stellæ sunt óculi coeli.* 13. *Deus est in coelis.* 14. *Béati vident óstia coelórum.* 15. *Deus est justus, et líberat nos a malo.* 16. *Ad te, Sancta María, clamámus.* 17. *Christiáni ámbulant in viis Dómini.* 18. *Stamus ante jánuam coeli et clamámus ad Dóminum.* 19. *Iram Dei semper timére debémus.* 20. *Deus regnat in coelis.*

## EXERCISE XXV.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>sedére</i> , to sit.	<i>exaltáre</i> , to exalt.
<i>quid ?</i> what ?	<i>déxtera</i> , right hand.*
<i>vivus</i> , living.	<i>misericórdia</i> , mercy.
<i>mórtuus</i> , dead.	<i>leváre</i> , to lift up.

1. *Deus júdicat vivos et mórtuos.* 2. *Christus sedet ad dexteram Dei.* 3. *Ad te, Dómine, óculos meos levo.* 4. *De profúndis óculos nostros ad Deum levámus.* 5. *Justi sperant in misericórdiâ tuâ, Dómine.* 6. *Fílii regínae ámbulant in viâ justórum.* 7. *Deus líberat nos ab inimícis nostris.* 8. *Sperámus in misericórdiâ Dei.* 9. *Quid times, O serve ? Tímeo iram magístri.* 10. *Déxtera Dei me exaltáre potest.* 11. *Ad te, Dómine, levo ánimam meam.* 12. *Sancti sedent in coelo, et orant pro mundo.* 13. *Servus meus est mórtuus.* 14. *Deus júdicat vitas mortuórum.* 15. *Debémus amáre inimícos nostros.*

\* *déxtera* is sometimes written *dextra*.

16. *Vivi sperant in misericórdiâ Dómini.* 17. *Regína est mísera quia ancílla est mórtua.* 18. *Déxtera Dei exáltat justos.* 19. *Ira Dómini nos terret.* 20. *Cur non times verba Dómini ?*

## SECTION XIV.

Third Conjugation : RÉGERE, to rule.

Present Tense.

<b>rego</b>	I rule ( <i>or am ruling</i> )
<b>regis</b>	thou rulest
<b>regit</b>	he rules
<b>régimus</b>	we rule
<b>régitis</b>	you rule
<b>regunt</b>	they rule

## EXERCISE XXVI.

VOCABULARY.

**ducere**, to lead.                      **benedicere**, to bless.  
**dicere**, to say, tell.                **mittere**, to send.  
**ludere**, to play.                        **scribere**, to write.  
**quo ?** whither ?                       **vadere**, to go, walk.

1. *Quo vadis ?* 2. *Quem mittis ?* 3. *Quid dicis ?* 4. *Deus nos benedícit.* 5. *Quid scribitis ?* 6. *Quis epístolam mittit ?* 7. *Deus regit mundum.* 8. *Quid dicitis ?* 9. *Quem servus ducit ?* 10. *Púeri ludunt in agris.* 11. *Quo vadit servus ?* 12. *Servus vadit ad agros.* 13. *Quis potest scribere epístolam ?* 14. *Servus ducit puéllas et púeros.* 15. *Mitto servum meum ad regínam.* 16. *Quid scribis in epistolâ ?* 17. *Ancílla ducit parvam puéllam.* 18. *Deus justos benedícit.* 19. *Quem mittis ad regínam ?* 20. *Quo vadunt púeri ?*

## EXERCISE XXVII.

VOCABULARY.

**relinquere**, to leave.                **protégere**, to protect.  
**diligere**, to love.                      **cognoscere**, to know.  
**umbra**, a shadow.                      **defendere**, to defend.  
**ala**, a wing.                              **sub**, under (*Abl.*).

1. *Deus protégit me sub umbrâ alárum.* 2. *Deus nos díligit et nos Deum díligimus.* 3. *Nos cognóscimus Christum, et Christus cognóscit nos.* 4. *Quo vadit ancílla ? Ancílla vadit*

ad reginam. 5. Púeri stant in agris et sub umbrâ. 6. Alae angelórum sunt pulchrae. 7. Fílius reginae librum magnum scribit. 8. Dóminus nos deféndit ab inimicis nostris. 9. Deus mittit ángelos ad terram. 10. Christus relínquit terram et vadit ad coelos. 11. Ángelos Dei dilígimus. 12. Cur relínquis púeros in agris? 13. Ángeli nos protégere possunt sub umbrâ alárum. 14. Deus nos deféndit a periculo. 15. Debémus dilígere inimicos nostros. 16. Quid dicis, O magister? verba tua non laudo. 17. Puéllae parvae ludunt in agris sub umbrâ. 18. Regnum Dei est in coelo. 19. Quis servum ad reginam mittere potest? 20. Púeri non audent lúdere in viis, quia timent filios magistri.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

principium, a beginning.

tóllere, to take away.

dimíttre, to dismiss or forgive.

suus, his (or her, or their) own.

nunc (*adverb*), now.

1. In principio, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculorum. 2. Agnus Dei tollit peccata mundi. 3. Deus dimittit peccata populi. 4. Quis audet nos culpáre? 5. Cur laudas púeros malos? 6. Ángeli Dei protégent nos a periculis. 7. Sancti Dei sunt in coelis. 8. Deus benedícit justos et bonos. 9. Christus nunc relínquit mundum. 10. Deus amat pópulum suum. 11. Quis audet mittere servum ad reginam magnam? 12. Regina laudat filios suos, sed culpát filias féminae. 13. Alas angelórum non vidére póssumus. 14. Ministri reginae arant agros, sed púeri ludunt in umbrâ. 15. Deus illúminat óculos pópuli. 16. Dextera Dei exáltat Sanctos suos. 17. Féminae sedent in agris. 18. Regina dimittit peccata ancillarum. 19. Filius magistri docet púeros parvos. 20. Púeri et puéllae vadunt in agros.

## SECTION XV.

Fourth Conjugation: AUDÍRE, to hear.

## Present Tense.

audio	I hear ( <i>or am hearing</i> )
audis	thou hearest
audit	he hears
audimus	we hear
auditis	you hear
audiunt	they hear

## EXERCISE XXIX.

## VOCABULARY.

**impédire**, to hinder.**sepelire**, to bury.**punire**, to punish.**exaudire**, to hear graciously.**venire**, to come.**advenire**, to come to, arrive at.

1. Féminae puerum sepéliunt. 2. Puélla venit ad me. 3. Quis punit ancíllam? 4. Púeri impédiunt magístrum. 5. Christus audit nos, Christus exaúdit nos. 6. Audímus alas angelórum. 7. Advénimus ad jánuam. 8. Quid te impedit? 9. Cur punis púeros parvos? 10. Cuius fílium sepelítis? 11. Magíster punit púeros malos, sed laudat puéllas bonas. 12. Quis audet nos punire? 13. Non debes impédire servos regínae. 14. Sanctus Petrus stat ad óstium coeli. 15. Quis potest audire alas angelórum? 16. Púeri et puéllae véniunt in agros. 17. Cur punis servum bonum? 18. Regína magna jubet servos suos punire ancíllam míseram. 19. Puélla parva vult lúdere in agris. 20. Debémus audire verba magístrórum nostrórum.

## EXERCISE XXX.

## VOCABULARY.

**plenus** (*followed by Abl.*), full.**propter** (*Acc.*), on account of.**nobis**, *Dat. and Abl. of nos.***custodire**, to guard.**grátia**, grace.**ágere**, to do, act, drive.**grátias ágere**, to thank (*Dative of person*).**aperire**, to open.

1. María est plena grátia. 2. Deo grátias ágimus. 3. Servus áperit jánuas. 4. Ángeli Deo grátias agunt. 5. Servi et ministri custódiunt regínam. 6. Sancti et Apóstoli sunt pleni grátia. 7. Grátias ágimus Deo propter magnam glóriam. 8. Nunc dimíttis servum tuum, Dómine. 9. Plena est terra glóriâ tuâ, Dómine. 10. Deo grátias ágere semper debémus. 11. Ministri regínae orant pro nobis. 12. Pleni sunt coeli et terra glóriâ Dei. 13. Ancílla Dómino grátias agit. 14. Ángeli Dei nos custódiunt sub umbrâ alárum suárum. 15. Servi sunt míseri propter peccáta sua. 16. Regína jubet servos custodire jánuas. 17. Fémina sépelit fílium mórtuum. 18. Timémus regínam propter iram. 19. Te adorámus et benedicimus, Deus. 20. Coelum est plenum glóriâ Dei.

## SECTION XVI.

## The Imperative Mood.

The 2nd person singular of the Imperative Active of any verb is formed by removing the *-re* of the Infinitive: *e.g.*, **amare**, to love, **ama**, love thou; **audire**, to hear, **audi**, hear thou.

The 2nd person plural of the Imperative Active is formed by adding *-te* to the 2nd person singular, except with 3rd Conjugation verbs, when the *-e* of the singular must first be changed to *i*: *e.g.*, **ama**, **amáte**; **mone**, **monéte**; **audi**, **audíte**; *but* **rege**, **régite**.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

## VOCABULARY.

**convértere**, to turn.  
**thronus**, a throne.

**ave** (*Imperative*), hail!  
**intercédere**, to intercede.

1. **Ángeli stant ante thronum Dei.** 2. **Ora pro nobis, Sancta María.** 3. **Intercédite pro nobis, Sancti Petre et Paule.** 4. **Ángeli Dei, custodíte nos.** 5. **Jube me veníre ad te, Dómine.** 6. **Veníte ad me.** 7. **Defénde nos, Dómine.** 8. **Exaúdi nos, Christe.** 9. **Leva óculos tuos et vide ángelos.** 10. **Prótege nos, Deus, sub umbrâ alárum tuárum.** 11. **Libera nos, Dómine, a perículo et malo.** 12. **Ave María, grátiâ plena.** 13. **Protégite nos, Sancti Apóstoli.** 14. **Ádjuva nos, Sancta María.** 15. **Illúmina óculos meos, Dómine.** 16. **Custodíte óstia, servi.** 17. **Veníte in agros et lúdite, púeri.** 18. **Monéte púeros, magístri.** 19. **Convérte óculos tuos ad Dóminum.** 20. **Ángeli vident thronum Dei.**

## SECTION XVII.

## Future of 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

<b>amábo</b>	I shall love	<b>monébo</b>	I shall advise
<b>amábis</b>	thou wilt love	<b>monébis</b>	thou wilt advise
<b>amábit</b>	he will love	<b>monébit</b>	he will advise
<b>amábimus</b>	we shall love	<b>monébitis</b>	we shall advise
<b>amábitis</b>	you will love	<b>monébitis</b>	you will advise
<b>amábunt</b>	they will love	<b>monébunt</b>	they will advise

## EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Levábo óculos ad Dóminum. 2. Deus adjuvábít et liberábít nos. 3. Orábimus ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 4. Laudábítis verba Dómini. 5. Vidébis ángelos Dei. 6. Timébimus te, Dómine. 7. Verba tua terrébunt púeros parvos. 8. Stábimus ante jánuas coeli. 9. Ángeli vidébunt glóriam Dei. 10. Dextera Dei exaltábít justos. 11. Dóminus illuminábít óculos meos. 12. Deus liberábít pópulum suum. 13. Stábimus ante thronum Dei. 14. Clamábimus ad Dóminum. 15. Dóminus judicábít nos. 16. Sancti habébunt glóriam in coelis. 17. Ambulábimus in viis Dómini. 18. Quis audébit mittere servum ad regínam? 19. Regína jubébit te scribere multas epístolas. 20. Fémina narrábít fábulas longas.

## Future of ESSE.

ero	I shall be	érimus	we shall be
eris	thou wilt be	éritis	you will be
erit	he will be	erunt	they will be

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

## VOCABULARY.

íterum, again.  
sicut, as.  
ut, as, when.

pupílla, pupil (*of eye*), apple of eye.  
pius, pious, gentle, loving.  
solus, alone.

1. Érimus boni. 2. Púeri erunt mali. 3. Puélla erit pulchra. 4. Quis erit magíster? 5. Laetus ero. 6. Pius eris. 7. Dóminus adjuvábít servos suos. 8. Deus solus est bonus. 9. Custódi me, Dómine, ut pupíllam óculi: sub umbrá alárum tuárum prótege me. 10. Íterum clamábo ad te, Dómine. 11. Sancti erunt in coelo. 12. Laudáte Deum, Apóstoli et Sancti. 13. De profúndis clamábo ad te, Dómine. 14. Veníte, fílii, et audíte me. 15. Dextera Dei exaltábít me. 16. Lauda, ánima mea, Dóminum. 17. Amíci nostri sperant in Deo. 18. Ángeli stant ante thronum Dei. 19. Justi erunt beáti. 20. Íterum vénimus ad te, Dómine.

## SECTION XVII (Continued).

## Future of 3rd and 4th Conjugations.

N.B.—The Future of the 3rd and 4th Conjugations differs considerably from that of the 1st and 2nd, and care must be taken not to confuse the Future of the 3rd Conjugation with the Present of the 2nd.

regam	I shall rule	audiam	I shall hear
reges	thou wilt rule	audies	thou wilt hear
reget	he will rule	audiet	he will hear
regemus	we shall rule	audiemus	we shall hear
regétis	you will rule	audétis	you will hear
regent	they will rule	audient	they will hear

## EXERCISE XXXIV.

## VOCABULARY.

divinus, divine.

surgere, to rise.

legere, to read.

ostendere, to show.

resurgere, to rise again.

nunquam, never.

1. Deus ostendet nobis misericordiam suam. 2. Legemus multos libros. 3. Quis poterit scribere epistolam? 4. Audiemus verba magistri. 5. Pueri ludent in agris. 6. Deus nos proteget sub umbra alarum. 7. Angeli nos custodient. 8. Deus nos defendet. 9. Sanctus Petrus aperiet ostium coeli. 10. Christus tollet peccata mundi. 11. Veniam ad te, Domine. 12. Adveniemus ad januam coeli. 13. Deus solus est divinus. 14. Dextera Dei nos defendet. 15. Quis poterit aperire ostium coeli? 16. Quo convertam oculos meos? 17. Deus me custodiet ut pupillam oculi sui. 18. Sanctus Paulus intercedet pro nobis. 19. Deus dimittet peccata nostra. 20. Deus solus est sanctus et pius et divinus.

## SECTION XVIII.

## Imperfect of all Conjugations.

amabam	monebam	regebam	audiobam	eram
amabas	monebas	regebas	audiobas	eras
amabat	monebat	regebat	audiobat	erat
amabamus	monebamus	regebamus	audiobamus	eramus
amabatis	monebatis	regebatis	audiobatis	eratis
amabant	monebant	regebant	audiobant	erant

N.B.—The Imperfect Tense is used to express continuous or habitual action in past time, and may be translated *I was loving*, or *I used to love*.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Ancillae clamabant ad Deum. 2. Regina laudabat puellas. 3. Femina narrabat fabulam longam. 4. Audiebamus verba magistri. 5. Puella timebat reginam. 6. Regina erat bona et pulchra. 7. Pueri aperiabant januas. 8. Ministri docebant filios feminae. 9. Servus ducebat puellas parvas. 10. Femina monstrabat stellas filio reginae. 11. Magister pueros malos puniebat. 12. Sicut erat in principio, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculorum. 13. Magister bonus moniebat pueros parvos. 14. Regina laudabat epistolas tuas. 15. Maria erat ancilla Domini. 16. Puella librum longum legebat. 17. Non poteramus venire ad januam. 18. Puer parvus scribebat epistolam longam. 19. Gloria sanctorum erat magna. 20. Timebamus verba feminae. 21. Puella fabulam longam nobis narrabat. 22. Angelus veniebat ad Mariam. 23. Quis poterat legere librum? 24. Cur ludebas in agris? 25. Magister nos semper terrebat. 26. Servi reginae januam custodiebant. 27. Ambulabamus in viis. 28. Magister erat pius. 29. Cur veniebas ad me? 30. Verba reginae terrebat puellam parvam.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>totus</b> , whole, all.	<b>aeternus</b> , eternal.
<b>benedictus</b> , blessed.	<b>in aeternum</b> , to eternity.
<b>ascendere</b> , to ascend.	<b>descendere</b> , to descend.
<b> flere</b> , to weep.	<b>ecce</b> , behold.

N.B.—The preposition *cum*, *with*, is suffixed to the ablative case of the personal pronouns: *e.g.*, *meum*, *with me*; *nostrum*, *with us*; *vobiscum*, *with you*, etc.

The verb *to be* is often omitted in Latin, and must be supplied in the English: *e.g.*, *Dominus vobiscum*, *the Lord be with you*.

1. Tota pulchra es, Maria. 2. Ecce ancilla Domini. 3. Adoramus te in aeternum, Domine. 4. Feminae sedebant et flebant. 5. Nunquam videbo reginam. 6. Christus ascendit in coelum. 7. Christus descendit ad terram. 8. Ecce Agnus Dei. 9. Ave Maria, gratia plena, Dominus tecum. 10. Benedicta es, Maria. 11. Deus est aeternus. 12. Angeli descendunt de coelo. 13. Quis videbit gloriam Dei? 14. Nunquam iterum te videbo. 15. Quid dicis, O magister? 16. Cur laudabas pueros et culpabas puellas? 17. Pueri et puellae ludabant in agris cum ancilla reginae. 18. Veniam tecum ad reginam. 19. Angeli Dei custodient nos. 20. Quid times? Deus semper protegit populum suum. 21. Te laudabimus in aeternum, O Deus.

22. Grátias agémus Dómino. 23. Regína mittet multos servos ad féminam. 24. Sancti ascéndent ad coelos. 25. Ángelus Dei nuntiábat Maríae. 26. Vitam nostram Dómino damus. 27. Deus próteget et custódiét nos in perículo. 28. Rosas multas reginae magnae dábitus. 29. Deus nos jubébit veníre ad óstium coeli. 30. Christe, audi nos; Christe, exaúdi nos.

### SECTION XIX.

#### Third Declension.

N.B.—The 3rd Declension is difficult because the Nominative Singular may terminate with almost any letter of the alphabet, and the stem of the noun may differ from the Nominative. It is therefore necessary to know the stem of a noun before it can be declined, and as the stem is found by removing the case-ending of the Genitive Singular, in the subsequent vocabularies the Genitive case is given after all nouns. As the Gender of the 3rd Declension varies, the gender of these nouns will be given.

#### CLAMOR, a cry (*m.*).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative .. ..	clamor	clamóres
Vocative .. ..	clamor	clamóres
Accusative .. ..	clamórem	clamóres
Genitive .. ..	clamóris	clamórum
Dative .. ..	clamóri	clamóribus
Ablative .. ..	clamóre	clamóribus

### EXERCISE XXXVII.

#### VOCABULARY.

múlier, mulieris (*f.*), a woman.

labor, labóris (*m.*), work.

amor, amóris (*m.*), love.

pastor, pastóris (*m.*), a shepherd.

martyr, mártýris (*m.* or *f.*), a martyr.

redemptor, redemptóris (*m.*), a redeemer.

1. Clamóres nostri véniunt ad te, Dómine. 2. Mártýres vitam suam Dómino dant. 3. María est Regína Mártýrum. 4. Mulieres véniunt ad Christum. 5. Amor Dei est magnus. 6. Deus benedícet labórem nostrum. 7. Audímus clamóres puerórum. 8. Vidémus pastórem in agris. 9. Christus est Redemptor mundi. 10. Ora pro nobis, Regína Mártýrum. 11. Regína laudat labórem ministrórum. 12. Mulieres non saepe audent pugnáre in bello. 13. María est auxiliúm nostrum in labóre. 14. Mulieres

febant ante thronum reginae. 15. Videbamus multos pastores in agris. 16. Amor reginae est magnus. 17. Damus multas rosas mulieribus. 18. Audiebamus clamores mulierum. 19. Jesus est pastor bonus. 20. Labor pastorum est magnus.

### Third Declension (Continued).

N.B.—The following declensions show some common types of 3rd Declension nouns. The singular only is given, as the plural in each case is quite regular.\*

	<b>PAX</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), peace.	<b>VIRGO</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), Virgin.	<b>MILES</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), soldier.
Nominative ..	<b>pax</b>	<b>Virgo</b>	<b>miles</b>
Vocative ..	<b>pax</b>	<b>Virgo</b>	<b>miles</b>
Accusative ..	<b>pacem</b>	<b>Virginem</b>	<b>militem</b>
Genitive ..	<b>pacis</b>	<b>Virginis</b>	<b>militis</b>
Dative ..	<b>paci</b>	<b>Virgini</b>	<b>militi</b>
Ablative ..	<b>pace</b>	<b>Virgine</b>	<b>militē</b>

	<b>VIRTUS</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), virtue.	<b>LAUS</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), praise.	<b>ORATIO</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), prayer.
Nominative	<b>virtus</b>	<b>laus</b>	<b>oratio</b>
Vocative ..	<b>virtus</b>	<b>laus</b>	<b>oratio</b>
Accusative ..	<b>virtutem</b>	<b>laudem</b>	<b>orationem</b>
Genitive ..	<b>virtutis</b>	<b>laudis</b>	<b>orationis</b>
Dative ..	<b>virtuti</b>	<b>laudi</b>	<b>orationi</b>
Ablative ..	<b>virtute</b>	<b>laude</b>	<b>oratione</b>

### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Christiani sunt milites Christi. 2. Laudem et amorem Deo damus. 3. Maria est Virgo Virginum. 4. Pax vobiscum. 5. Exaudi, Domine, orationem meam. 6. Milites bellum saepe amant. 7. Deus pacem suam nobis dat, et ducet nos in viam sanctam. 8. Virtutem Sanctorum laudamus. 9. Milites pugnant pro patria. 10. Laus Deo semper. 11. Videbimus milites in vis et agris. 12. Pueri amant milites. 13. Da nobis pacem tuam, Domine. 14. Mulieres laudant milites. 15. Oramus pro mulieribus quia miserae sunt. 16. Ad te venimus, Maria, Virgo Virginum. 17. Amamus te, O puer, quia bonus es.

\* For those nouns which form their Genitive Plural in **-ium** see note on page 88.

18. Deus aúdiat oratiónes nostras. 19. Amámus beátam Mariám semper Virgínem. 20. Laudo virtútem mílitum Christianórum.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

## VOCABULARY.

pater, patris (*m.*), father.  
 mater, matris (*f.*), mother.  
 panis, panis (*m.*), bread, loaf.  
 mors, mortis (*f.*), death.  
 hódie, to-day.

illuminátio, illuminatiónis (*f.*), light.  
 quotidiánus, daily.  
 donáre, to grant, give.  
 et, also, as.  
 cras, to-morrow.

1. Díligam te, Dómine, virtus mea. 2. Dóminus illuminátio mea. 3. Panem de coelo das nobis, Dómine. 4. Dona nobis pacem. 5. María est Mater Dei. 6. Mílités Christiáni pugnant pro Christo. 7. Deus est Pater noster. 8. Ecce panis Angelórum. 9. Panem nostrum quotidiánum da nobis hódie. 10. Cras vidébimus mulieres et puéllas. 11. Post mortem est vita aetérna. 12. Díligimus Matrem Christi. 13. Dóminus vitam in pátriâ nobis donat. 14. Sicut in coelo et in terrâ. 15. Sancta María, ora pro nobis, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae. 16. Nunc Christus nos relínquit et vadit ad patrem. 17. Hódie lúdimus in agris, sed cras vadémus ad bellum. 18. Regína dat panem puéllis et púeris. 19. Deus panem quotidiánum nobis dat. 20. Dóminus illuminátio mea est, quem timébo? 21. Deus vitam aetérnam post mortem nobis dat. 22. Cur mortem timémus? 23. Mílités pugnant pro regínâ et pátriâ. 24. Debémus adjuváre mílites pecúniâ et pane. 25. Cras vidébimus regínam.

## EXERCISE XL.

## VOCABULARY.

véritas, veritátis (*f.*), truth.  
 lux, lucis (*f.*), light.  
 vox, vocis (*f.*), voice.  
 salve, hail!  
 auctor, auctóris (*m.*), author.  
 soror, soróris (*f.*), sister.

qui (*relative pronoun*), who.  
 manére, to remain, abide, endure.  
 incénsus, incénsi (*n.*), incense.  
 peccátor, peccatóris (*m. or f.*), a sinner.  
 confessor, confessoris (*m.*), a confessor.  
 honor, honoris (*m.*), honour.

1. Véritas Dómini manébit in aetérnum. 2. Incénsus ascéndit ad Dóminum. 3. Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, dona nobis pacem. 4. Pater noster, qui es in coelis. 5. Christus est lux mundi. 6. Ángeli vocem Dómini audíre possunt. 7. Grátias agam Dómino qui líberat me a malo. 8. Beátus est vir qui sperat in Dómino. 9. Sancta María, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatóribus, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae. 10. Dómine, Deus virtútum, exaúdi oratióne meam. 11. Mártyres et Con-

fessóres, oráte pro nobis. 12. Honórem et amórem Deo dábitus. 13. Jesus est Auctor vitæ nostræ. 14. Salve Regina, Mater misericórdiæ. 15. Ancilla reginæ est soror magístri. 16. Nos peccatóres clamámus ad te, Dómine. 17. Lucem stellárum vidére póssumus. 18. Deus veritátem et virtútem amat. 19. Manébo cum soróribus meis in agris. 20. Mílites, qui pugnant in viis, sunt boni.

## EXERCISE XLI.

## VOCABULARY.

ovis, ovis (*f.*), sheep.

ego, I.

tu, thou.

mons, montis (*m.*), mountain.tibi (*Dative of tu*), to thee.mihi (*Dative of ego*), to me.

1. Grátias ágimus tibi, propter magnam glóriam tuam. 2. Dona mihi pacem tuam. 3. De profúndis clamábo ad te, Dómine; Dómine, exaúdi vocem meam. 4. In horá mortis meæ voca me, et jube me veníre ad te, Dómine. 5. Ad montes levábo óculos meos. 6. Fémina longam fábulam mihi narrábat. 7. Laudáte, púeri, Dóminum; et grátias Deo ágite. 8. Ego sum pastor bonus, et cognóscó oves meas, et cognóscunt me meæ. 9. Ducam te ad montem sanctum meum. 10. Deus mittet nobis lucem suam et veritátem. 11. Pastórem qui oves suas custódit laudámus. 12. María est Regina Confessorum et Mártyrum et Angelórum. 13. Soror mea parva me amat. 14. Osténde mihi vias tuas, Domine. 15. Montes pátriæ nostræ sunt magni. 16. Sancti stant ante thronum Dei. 17. Tu solus es Sanctus, tu solus Dóminus. 18. Deus mihi dabit pacem suam. 19. Bonos et justos nunquam timémus. 20. Resurgémus post mortem, et ascendémus ad coelum.

## SECTION XX.

## Neuter Nouns of the 3rd Declension.

	NOMEN, a name.		OPUS, a work.	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative ..	nomen	nómina	opus	ópera
Vocative ..	nomen	nómina	opus	ópera
Accusative ..	nomen	nómina	opus	ópera
Genitive ..	nóminis	nóminum	óperis	óperum
Dative ..	nómini	nomínibus	óperi	opéribus
Ablative ..	nómine	nomínibus	ópere	opéribus

N.B.—The Accusative (singular and plural) of all Neuter nouns is the same as the Nominative.

## EXERCISE XLII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>corpus, cōrporis</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), body.	<b>lumen, lūminis</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), light.
<b>mare, maris</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), sea ( <i>Abŕ. mari</i> ).	<b>altāre, altāris</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), altar.
<b>cor, cordis</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), heart.	<b>os, oris</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), mouth, face.

1. Laudāte Dōminum, pūeri; laudāte nomen Dōmini. 2. **María** est stella maris. 3. **Panis** noster est Corpus Dōmini. 4. **Ángeli** stant ante altāre Dōmini. 5. **Mare** saepe timémus. 6. **Benedíctus** qui venit in nómine Dōmini. 7. Laudábo Dōminum toto corde meo. 8. **Lumen** de Lúmine. 9. Dōminus est in corde tuo. 10. Dōminum laudábo ore meo. 11. **Lúmina** in coelis videmus. 12. Laudábo ópera Dei. 13. **Amámus** et timémus Sanctum Nomen tuum, Dómine. 14. **Cor** militis est pium et bonum. 15. In nómine Dōmini nostri **Jesu Christi** surgo. 16. Laudábimus nomen Dōmini. 17. **Soróres** meae habent multa nómina. 18. **Surgémus** et stábimus ante altāre Dei. 19. **Aquae** maris sunt latae et profúndae. 20. **Adorámus** et benedícimus te, Dómine, Redémptor mundi.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>sanguis, sánguinis</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), blood.	<b>vulnus, vúlneris</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), a wound.
<b>homo, hómínis</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), a man.	<b>latus, láteris</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), a side.
<b>crux, crucis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), a cross.	<b>abscondere</b> , to hide.
<b>intra</b> ( <i>Acc.</i> ), within.	<b>pendere</b> , to hang.
<b>spina, spinæ</b> , ( <i>f.</i> ), a thorn.	<b>lavare</b> , to wash.

1. **Adorámus** Corpus et Sanguinem Christi. 2. **Aqua** láteris Christi, lava me. 3. **Intra** vúlnera tua absconde me. 4. In horá mortis meae voca me. 5. **Et** jube me venire ad te. 6. **Jesus** Christus venit in mundum. 7. **Adorámus** vúlnera Christi. 8. **Jesus** Christus pendet in cruce pro hómíne. 9. **Jesus** habet corónam spinárum. 10. **Adorámus** crucem sanctam Christi. 11. **Coróna** Christi habet multas spinas. 12. **Adorámus** vúlnera in látere Christi. 13. **Corpus** Dōmini est panis noster. 14. **Surgam** et vadam ad patrem meum. 15. **Córpore** nostra in aquis maris lavábimus. 16. **Pūeri** apériunt ora et cantant. 17. **Hómínes** sunt peccatóres. 18. **Miles** habet vulnus in látere suo. 19. **Cruce** stat in monte sancto. 20. **Nomen** Dōmini semper amáre debémus.

## EXERCISE XLIV.

## VOCABULARY.

**tempus, tēporis** (*n.*), time.  
**caput, cāpitis** (*n.*), head.  
**signum, signi** (*n.*), a sign.  
**robur, robōris** (*n.*), strength.  
**solum** (*adverb*), alone.  
**in** (*Abl.*), among.

**salus, salūtis** (*f.*), salvation, health.  
**sacerdos, sacerdotis** (*m.*), a priest.  
**signāre**, to sign.  
**adjutōrium, adjutōrii** (*n.*), help.  
**fer** (*Imperative*), bring.  
**per** (*Acc.*), through, by.

1. Ave María, grātiâ plena, Dóminus tecum; benedícta tu in muliéribus. 2. Da robur, fer auxiliū. 3. Per signum crucis ab inimícis nostris líbera nos, Dómine. 4. Sacerdos stat ante altáre. 5. Adjutōrium nostrum est in nómine Dómini. 6. Jesus Christus venit per aquam et sánguinem: non in aquâ solâ, sed in aquâ et ságuine. 7. Sacerdos signat nos signo crucis. 8. Sacerdos dat nobis Corpus Dómini nostri. 9. In tempóribus perículi hómines semper clamant ad Deum. 10. Fer aquam ad me, serve. 11. Divínū auxiliū manébit semper nobiscum. 12. Osténde nobis, Dómine, misericórdiam tuam. 13. Debémus nunquam timére ópera justórum. 14. Jesus habet corónam spinárum in cápite suo. 15. In Cruce Dómini nostri Jesu Christi est salus nostra. 16. Dóminus illuminátio mea et salus mea, quem timébo? 17. Sacerdótes stant ante altáre et grátias Deo agunt. 18. Per crucem sanctam tuam, líbera nos, Dómine. 19. Sacerdos surgit et stat ante altáre. 20. Lavábimus peccáta nostra in ságuine Agni. 21. Deus est robur et auxiliū nostrum. 22. Pastóres oves in agris custódiunt. 23. Ópera Dei sunt bona et magna. 24. Quis non laudat pópulum bonum? 25. Líbera nos, Dómine, a malo et perículo.

## SECTION XXI.

## Adjectives of the 3rd Declension.

Adjectives of the 3rd Declension are declined very similarly to the nouns. The Masculine and Feminine endings are the same, and the Neuter differs only in the first three cases, and not always then. The majority of 3rd Declension Adjectives terminate in **-is** or **-ens**. The Ablative singular (all genders) ends in **-i**, and the Genitive Plural in **-ium**.

## TRISTIS, sad.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	<b>tristis</b>	<b>triste</b>	<b>tristes</b>	<b>tristia</b>
Vocative ..	<b>tristis</b>	<b>triste</b>	<b>tristes</b>	<b>tristia</b>
Accusative ..	<b>tristem</b>	<b>triste</b>	<b>tristes</b>	<b>tristia</b>
Genitive ..	<b>tristis</b>	<b>tristis</b>	<b>tristium</b>	<b>tristium</b>
Dative ..	<b>tristi</b>	<b>tristi</b>	<b>tristibus</b>	<b>tristibus</b>
Ablative ..	<b>tristi</b>	<b>tristi</b>	<b>tristibus</b>	<b>tristibus</b>

## EXERCISE XLV.

## VOCABULARY.

**dulcis**, sweet.  
**fortis**, brave.  
**omnis**, all.  
**brevis**, short.

**amábilis**, amiable, lovable.  
**fidélis**, faithful.  
**húmilis**, humble.  
**gens, gentis** (*f.*), gentile, nation.

1. Vita nostra est brevis. 2. Mílites sunt fortes qui pugnant pro nobis. 3. Laudáte Dóminum, omnes gentes, laudáte Dóminum, omnes pópuli. 4. Ómnia ópera Dei sunt bona. 5. Amámus Mariám, Matrem amábilem. 6. Cur es tristis? 7. Da nobis ómnibus, O Dómine, vitam aetérnam. 8. Per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 9. Omnes hómines possunt laudáre Deum. 10. Ancillae Dómini sunt húmiles. 11. O dulcis Virgo María, ora pro nobis. 12. O Jesu dulcis, O Jesu pie. 13. María est auxiliúm fidélium. 14. Ánimae fidélium sunt in pace. 15. Líbera nos, Dómine, ab ómnibus perículis. 16. Brevem vitam in terrâ habémus. 17. Omnes púeri ludunt in agris. 18. Puéllas dulces et amábiles amámus. 19. Omnes gentes laudant Dóminum. 20. Ancillae regínae sunt fidéles et húmiles.

## POTENS, powerful.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	<b>potens</b>	<b>potens</b>	<b>poténtes</b>	<b>poténtia</b>
Vocative ..	<b>potens</b>	<b>potens</b>	<b>poténtes</b>	<b>poténtia</b>
Accusative ..	<b>poténtem</b>	<b>potens</b>	<b>poténtes</b>	<b>poténtia</b>
Genitive ..	<b>poténtis</b>	<b>poténtis</b>	<b>poténtium</b>	<b>poténtium</b>
Dative ..	<b>poténti</b>	<b>poténti</b>	<b>poténtibus</b>	<b>poténtibus</b>
Ablative ..	<b>poténti</b>	<b>poténti</b>	<b>poténtibus</b>	<b>poténtibus</b>

EXERCISE XLVI.

VOCABULARY.

**prudens**, prudent.  
**sápiens**, wise.  
**crédere**, to believe.

**omnípotens**, all-powerful, almighty.  
**clemens**, merciful, kind.  
**creátor, creatóris (m.)**, creator.

1. Deus est omnípotens. 2. María est clemens. 3. Ópera Dei sunt poténtia. 4. Beáti sunt hómínes qui sunt prudéntes. 5. María est clemens et sápiens. 6. Vox sacerdotís est dulcis et potens. 7. Prudéntes sunt hómínes qui in viis Dómini ámbulant. 8. Deus est Pater omnípotens. 9. Omnes ángeli prótegent nos. 10. Verba magístri sunt prudéntia et poténtia. 11. Credo in Deum, Patrem omnípoténtem, Creatórem coeli et terrae. 12. Christus sedet ad dexteram Dei, Patris omnípoténtis. 13. Deus regnábít per ómnia saécula. 14. Omnes sacerdótes stabant ante altáre. 15. Ad Mariám, Vírginem poténtem, clamámus. 16. Custódi ómnia verba Dei in corde tuo. 17. Magístri non sunt cleméntes, quia culpant púeros bonos. 18. Laudámus mártýres qui sunt fortes et boni. 19. Vocem poténtem magístri audíre póssumus. 20. Laudámus verba sapiéntia tua.

**FELIX**, happy.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	<b>felix</b>	<b>felix</b>	<b>felices</b>	<b>felicia</b>
Vocative ..	<b>felix</b>	<b>felix</b>	<b>felices</b>	<b>felicia</b>
Accusative ..	<b>felicem</b>	<b>felix</b>	<b>felices</b>	<b>felicia</b>
Genitive ..	<b>felicis</b>	<b>felicis</b>	<b>felicitium</b>	<b>felicitium</b>
Dative ..	<b>felici</b>	<b>felici</b>	<b>felicibus</b>	<b>felicibus</b>
Ablative ..	<b>felici</b>	<b>felici</b>	<b>felicibus</b>	<b>felicibus</b>

EXERCISE XLVII.

VOCABULARY.

**supplex**, suppliant.  
**velox**, swift.  
**audax**, bold.  
**infélix**, unhappy.  
**si**, if.

**cívitas, civitátis (f.)**, a city.  
**núntius, núntií (m.)**, a messenger.  
**avis, avis (f.)**, a bird.  
**statim**, immediately.  
**voláre**, to fly.

1. Si felix es, cur fles? 2. Puellae supplices orant ante altare. 3. Si audaces estis, montem statim ascendetis. 4. Nuntius velox veniebat in civitatem. 5. Ancillae erant infelices quia pater in bello pugnabat. 6. Aves veloces in coelis volabant. 7. Alae avis sunt pulchrae. 8. Si laetus es, non debes flere. 9. In bello milites sunt fortes, sed in pace mortem saepe timent. 10. Verba tua sunt audacia, sed cor tuum est malum. 11. Si sapiens es, ad civitatem statim venies. 12. Mittam nuntios veloces ad reginam. 13. Regina debet adjuvare mulieres supplices. 14. Puellae sunt infelices et orant ante altare. 15. Pastores custodiebant oves et agnos in agris. 16. Milites sunt audaces et fortes. 17. Tu es audax sed non sapiens. 18. Mulieres flebant quia vulnera militum videbant. 19. Aves volant, sed oves ambulat. 20. Verba sacerdotis sunt sapientia.

## SECTION XXII.

## Fourth Declension Nouns.

	GRADUS, a step ( <i>m.</i> ).		GENU, a knee ( <i>n.</i> ).	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative ..	gradus	gradus	genu	genua
Vocative ..	gradus	gradus	genu	genua
Accusative ..	gradum	gradus	genu	genua
Genitive ..	gradus	graduum	genus	genuum
Dative ..	gradui	gradibus	genu	genibus
Ablative ..	gradu	gradibus	genu	genibus

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

fluctus (4),\* a wave (*m.*).†  
 conspectus (4), sight (*m.*).  
 manus (4), a hand (*f.*).  
 cornu (4), a horn (*n.*).

exercitus (4), an army, host (*m.*).  
 spiritus (4), breath, spirit (*m.*).  
 ponere, to place, lay down.  
 suscipere, to receive, undertake.

1. Gloria Patri et Filio et Spiritui Sancto. 2. Domine Jesu, suscipe spiritum meum. 3. Cur est vultus tuus tristis? 4. Pater, in manus tuas commendo spiritum meum. 5. Exer-

\* In future (4) after a noun denotes 4th Declension, and (2) 2nd Declension.

† Most nouns of the 4th Declension are masculine in gender.

citus Mártyrum Deum laudat. 6. Apóstolus erat plenus Spíritu Sancto. 7. Sumus mílites in exércitu Christi. 8. Súscipe, Dómine, oratióem meam. 9. Sacérdos ponit manus suas in capite puéllae parvae. 10. Stamus in conspéctu Dómini. 11. Exércitus Dómini vadunt ad bellum. 12. Cras vidébimus exércitum. 13. Cur times fluctus maris? 14. Vultus mártýris erat tristis sed fortis. 15. Dóminus vobíscum: et cum spíritu tuo. 16. Fluctus maris puéllas parvas terrent. 17. Dóminus súscipit oratióes nostras. 18. Laudámus exércitum mártýrum. 19. Justórum ánimae in manu Dei sunt. 20. Puélla parva tenébat avem mórtuam in manu suâ.

## SECTION XXIII.

## Fifth Declension Nouns.

DIES, a day (*f.*)\*

		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nominative	.. ..	dies	dies
Vocative	.. ..	dies	dies
Accusative	.. ..	diem	dies
Genitive	.. ..	diéi	diérum
Dative	.. ..	diéi	diébus
Ablative	.. ..	die	diébus

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## VOCABULARY.

fácies (5), face (*f.*).res (5), a thing, matter (*f.*).fides (5), faith (*f.*).spes (5), hope (*f.*).

1. Ad Mariám, spem nostram, clamámus. 2. Fides tua est bona. 3. Apóstoli vidébant faciém Dómini. 4. Multae res nos terrent. 5. Exércitus Dómini sunt magni. 6. Quis faciém Dei potest vidére? 7. Manébamus in spe Dómini. 8. Fides tua erat salus tua. 9. Jesus vidébat fidem mulieris. 10. Puéllae parvae timent multas res. 11. Deus cognóscit fidem pópuli. 12. Sacérdos ponébat manus suas in cápite púeri parvi. 13. In-

\* All 5th Declension nouns are feminine, though in Classical Latin *dies* is treated chiefly as masculine.

censum benedictum ascendit ad Dóminum. 14. Oratiónes nostrae sicut incensum in conspéctu Dómini sunt. 15. Sacerdos levat manus ad coelum. 16. Ángelus stat a dexterâ altáris incénsi. 17. Súscipe, sancte Pater, omnípotens, aetérne Deus, oratiónes nostras. 18. Christus véniet cum glóriâ judicáre vivos et mórtuos. 19. Credo in Spíritum sanctum. 20. Propter nos hómines, et propter nostram salútem Christus descendit de coelis.

## EXERCISE L.

## VOCABULARY.

baptizáre, to baptize.  
 cathólicus (*adj.*), catholic.  
 gaudére, to rejoice.  
 conturbáre, to disquiet.  
 laetificáre, to make glad.

réquies, requiél or requiétis (*f.*), rest.  
 Ecclésia (1), Church (*f.*).  
 quaré ? wherefore ?  
 emittere, to send forth.  
 juvéntus, juvéntutis (*f.*), youth.

1. Baptízo te in nómine Patris et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti.
2. Réquiem aetérnam dona mórtuis, Dómine. 3. Credo in Sanctam Cathólicam Ecclésiam. 4. Emitte lucem tuam, et veritátem tuam. 5. Deus laetificat juvéntutem meam. 6. Quaré tristis es, ánima mea, et quaré contúrbas me ? 7. Spera in Deo, qui est salus vultus tui. 8. Adjutórium nostrum est in nómine Dómini. 9. Deus te ducet ad vitam aetérnam. 10. Deus est Créator terrae. 11. Ego sum servus, et filius soróris tuae. 12. Stamus in conspéctu omnis pópuli. 13. Ante lucem ad civitátem veniémus. 14. Tu es sacerdos in aetérnum. 15. Dómine Jesu Christe, líbera ánimas ómnium fidélium. 16. In princípío erat Verbum. 17. Ópera Dómini laetificant cor meum. 18. Gaudéte, púeri, gaudéte et cantáte. 19. Sacerdos te baptizábit. 20. Deus emíttet lucem sanctam suam in Ecclésiam Cathólicam. 21. Deus illúminat óculos omnis hóminis qui venit in mundum. 22. Vidébimus glóriam Patris. 23. Ángeli gaudent et Dóminum laudant. 24. Ángelus Dómini descendit de coelo. 25. Sacerdos levábit manus suas et benedícet pópulum. 26. Omnes gentes laudábunt Mariám. 27. Veníte, filii, audíte me; docébo vos amórem Dómini. 28. Deus amat húmilem ancíllam. 29. Petrus et Paulus docent nos ópera Dómini. 30. Da pacem, Dómine, in diébus nostris, quia tu solus pugnas pro nobis.

## SECTION XXIV.

## Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of 1st Conjugation.

<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
<b>amávi</b>	I have loved, <i>or</i> I loved	<b>amáveram</b>	I had loved
<b>amavísti</b>	thou hast loved, <i>or</i> thou lovedst	<b>amáveras</b>	thou hadst loved
<b>amávít</b>	he has loved, <i>or</i> he loved	<b>amáverat</b>	he had loved
<b>amávimus</b>	we have loved, <i>or</i> we loved	<b>amaverámus</b>	we had loved
<b>amavístis</b>	you have loved, <i>or</i> you loved	<b>amaverátis</b>	you had loved
<b>amavérunt</b>	they have loved, <i>or</i> they loved	<b>amáverant</b>	they had loved

## EXERCISE LI.

## VOCABULARY.

verus (*adj.*), true.  
eum, him.

rex, regis (*m.*), king.  
domus (4),\* house (*f.*).

1. Dóminus amávít eum et ornávít eum. 2. Deus laetificávít juvenútém meam. 3. Vera lux illuminávít mundum, et dextera Dei exaltávít me. 4. Laudáveram ómnia ópera Dómini. 5. Quis judicáverat pópulum? 6. De profúndis clamávi ad te, Dómine. 7. Levávi óculos meos ad montes. 8. Justi ambulavérunt in viis Dómini. 9. Sacérdos signáverat nos signo crucis. 10. Ancillae ornáverant altáre Dei. 11. Cantaverátis Dómino. 12. Deus adjúverat† eum et liberáverat eum. 13. Quis vocávít me? 14. Laudavísti ancillas et puéllas. 15. Cur culpavístis servos vestros? 16. Míletes pugnáverant pro pátriâ. 17. Rex liberávít pópulum suum. 18. In Deo erat vita, et vita erat lux hómínium. 19. Domus Dómini est pulchra. 20. Veni, Sancte Spíritus, et emítte de coelo lucem sanctam tuam.

\* domus forms Ablative Singular from 2nd Declension: domo.

† The Perfect of *adjuvo* is *adjúví*, hence Pluperfect *adjúveram*.

SECTION XXIV (*Continued*).Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses of **MONĒRE** and **ESSE**.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
mónni monuísti mónnit monúimus monuístis monuérint	monúeram monúeras monúerat monuerámus monuerátis monúerant	fui fuísti fuit fúimus fuístis fuérunt	fúeram fúeras fúerat fuerámus fuerátis fúerant

## EXERCISE LII.

## VOCABULARY.

vigiláre, to watch.

aedificáre, to build.

1. Fémina mónnit puéllas. 2. Rex fuit tristis. 3. Magíster dócuit púeros. 4. Dóminus aedificávit domum. 5. Servi vigiláverunt. 6. Puélla ténuit avem mórtuam in manu suâ. 7. Quis monúerat regínam? 8. Quem timuístis? 9. Fúeram laeta. 10. Quid timuístis? 11. Cujus servum culpavísti? 12. Ancíllae fuérunt bonae et laetae. 13. Verba nuntii fuérunt audácia. 14. Servi vigiláverunt in jánuâ ecclésiae. 15. Déxtera Dómini ténuit me. 16. Véritas Dómini manet in aetérnum. 17. Dóminus nos judicávit. 18. Verba regínae terrúerant puéllam. 19. Quid regína mónnit? 20. Cur tristis fuísti?

## SECTION XXV.

Future-Perfect Tenses of **AMÁRE**, **MONĒRE**, and **ESSE**.

amávero amáveris amáverit amavérimus amavéritis amáverint	monéro monéris monérit monuérimus monuéritis monérint	fúero fúeris fúerit fuérimus fuéritis fúerint
--	--	--

English: *I shall have loved, I shall have advised, I shall have been, etc.*

N.B.—The Future-Perfect tense is often used after *si*, *if*, and *nisi*, *unless*, but the English idiom requires a present or simple future.

## EXERCISE LIII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>vanus</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ), vain.	<b>laboráre</b> , to work, labour.
<b>in vanum</b> , in vain.	<b>frustra</b> , in vain.
<b>nisi</b> , unless.	<b>heréditas, hereditátis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), heritage.

1. Nisi Dóminus aedificáverit domum, in vanum laboravérunt qui aedificánt domum. 2. Nisi Dóminus illumináverit óculos tuos, non vidébis ópera Dei. 3. Ecce, filii sunt heréditas Dómini. 4. Vanum est vobis súrgere ante lucem. 5. Pax est in virtúte Dómini. 6. Si vos frustra monúero, vos púniam. 7. Quis aedificávit civitátem? 8. Sancti laboravérunt in nómine Dómini. 9. Multi servi et ministri aedificáverunt civitátem. 10. Civitas est heréditas pópuli. 11. Ángelus Dómini nuntiávit Mariæ. 12. Ecce nunc benedícite Dóminum, omnes servi Dómini, qui statis in óstio domus Dei nostri. 13. Ángeli custódiunt nos in ómnibus viis nostris. 14. Deus me liberávit, et adjuvábít me in ómnibus perículis. 15. Clamábit ad me et ego exaúdiam eum. 16. In te, Dómine, sperávi. 17. Pastóres vigilábant in agris. 18. Deus nobis signum dabit. 19. Nisi Dóminus aedificáverit civitátem, hómínes in vanum laboravérunt. 20. Ego baptízo vos in aquâ; Dóminus vos baptizábit in Spíritu Sancto.

## SECTION XXVI.

## Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of RÉGERE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
rexí	réxero	réxeram
rexísti	réxeris	réxeras
rexít	réxerit	réxerat
rexímus	rexérimus	rexerámus
rexístis	rexéritis	rexerátis
rexérunt	rexerint	rexerant

N.B.—The Perfect Tense of most 3rd Conjugation verbs is irregular, and usually involves a change of stem. The present stem may be found by removing the *-ere* of the Infinitive; thus the stem of *régere* is *reg-*. Most verbs whose stem ends in *g* or *c* change that letter into *x* to form the perfect stem, as in *régere*.

In Exercise LIV only verbs which form their perfect in *x* are used.

## EXERCISE LIV.

1. Deus duxit me ad montem sanctum suum. 2. Regina rexit in civitate. 3. Quid dixisti, O puer? 4. Christus resurrexit a mortuis. 5. Pastor bonus dilexit oves suas. 6. Deus benedixit populum suum. 7. Cur servus puellam ad agros duxerat? 8. Sacerdos pueros benedixerat. 9. Non dimittam te, nisi benedixeris me. 10. Angelus dixit ad eum, Ego sum Gabriel, qui sto ante Deum. 11. Maria dixit, exaltavit humiles Dominus. 12. Ministri frustra vigilaverunt. 13. Deus nos liberavit a manu inimicorum nostrorum. 14. Vobis dixi, diligite inimicos vestros. 15. Servi duxerunt pueros ad civitatem. 16. Videbitis signa in coelo. 17. Bonus pastor animam suam dat pro ovibus suis. 18. Omnes gentes gaudabant in nomine Domini. 19. Si pueros ad agros duxeritis, vos laudabo. 20. Regina rexit multos annos in civitate.

## SECTION XXVII.

## Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of AUDIRE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
audivi audivisti audivit audivimus audivistis audiverunt	audivero audiveris audiverit audiverimus audiveritis audiverint	audiveram audiveras audiverat audiveramus audiveratis audiverant

## EXERCISE LV.

## VOCABULARY.

dolor, doloris (*m.*), grief.  
 frater, fratris (*m.*), a brother.  
 flumen, fluminis (*n.*), a river.  
 superare, to overcome.

manducare, to eat.  
 proximus (2), a neighbour.  
 impetus (4), power, attack.  
 habitare, to dwell.

1. Nisi Dominus custodiverit domum, frustra vigilat qui custodit domum. 2. Populus audivit vocem regis. 3. Manducavimus panem doloris. 4. Populus habitaverat in civitate. 5. Propter fratres meos et proximos dicam pacem de te. 6. Quis est proximus meus? 7. Magister puniverat pueros

malos. 8. Quis custodívit jánuam? 9. Non audiverámus verba regínae. 10. Mílites custodíverant jánuam domus. 11. Quis fratrem meum, qui tristis est, adjuvábít? 12. Superávimus inimícos nostros. 13. Ímpetus flúminis laetíficat civitátem Dei. 14. Quare punivísti púeros qui ludébant in agris? 15. Próximos nostros amáre debémus. 16. Manducámus panem angelórum. 17. Ecce mittam ángelum meum ante fáciem tuam, qui ducet te in vias pacis. 18. Docéte omnes gentes, et baptizáte in nómine Patris et Fílii et Spíritus Sancti. 19. Ángelus dixit muliéribus, Jesus surrexit, sicut dixit. 20. Mulieres vigilábant in jánuâ domus. 21. Multi sancti surrexérunt a mórtuis. 22. Quis audívit vocem mulferis? 23. Quid mandúcas? 24. Habitábamus in civitáte cum frátribus nostris. 25. Fluctus maris terrúerant omnes mulieres. 26. Non audiverámus eum: quid díxerat? 27. Dolor mulierum erat magnus. 28. Ímpetus flúminis térruit puéllas. 29. Cras vidébimus fratrem nostrum et sorórem tuam. 30. Quem mittes ad civitátem? Mittam núntium velócem.

## SECTION XXVIII.

## Some 2nd Conjugation Verbs with Irregular Perfects.

vidére, *perfect* vidi.sedére, *perfect* sedi.fieri, *perfect* flevi.jubére, *perfect* jussi.manére, *perfect* mansi.pendére, *perfect* pepéndi.

## EXERCISE LVI.

## VOCABULARY.

portáre, to carry.

ignis, ignis (*m.*), fire.

accéndere, to kindle.

donum (2), a gift, offering.

arbor, árboris (*f.*), a tree.

replére, to fill.

1. Mulieres sedérunt et fievérunt. 2. Veni Sancte Spíritus, reple corda fidélium. 3. Accénde in nobis ignem amóris tui. 4. Vidimus mílites in agris. 5. Jesus pepéndit in árbore crucis. 6. Cur mansísti in viâ? 7. Regína jussit núntium vádere ad civitátem. 8. Multae árbores in agris sunt. 9. Cur flevísti? 10. Regína vidit dolórem mulferum. 11. Spíritus Sanctus replet corda nostra. 12. Ignem in móntibus accendémus. 13. Cum Sanctis tuis laudábo te in saécula saeculórum. 14. Puéllae dona mittébant ad regínam magnam. 15. Quid portas? Porto librum et multas epístolas. 16. Habitámus in adjutório Dei. 17. Dóminus custódiat nos ut pupíllam óculi, et sub umbrâ

alárum suárum próteget nos. 18. Stabámus in umbrâ árborum in agris. 19. Divínium auxiliúm manébit semper nobíscum. 20. Te laudámus, Dómine, Rex aetérnae glóriæ.

### Perfects of some common 3rd Conjugation Verbs.

mítttere, *perfect* misi.

ágere, *perfect* egi.

relínquere, *perfect* reliqui.

scribere, *perfect* scripsi.

convértere, *perfect* convérti.

cognóscere, *perfect* cognóvi.

deféndere, *perfect* deféndi.

ascéndere, *perfect* ascéndi.

descéndere, *perfect* descéndi.

abscondere, *perfect* abscondi.

## EXERCISE LVII.

### VOCABULARY.

porta (1), gate, door.

almus (*adj.*), sweet, dear.

1. Quid scripsísti? 2. Jesus ascéndit in coelos. 3. Ángeli descendérunt ad terram. 4. Regína convértit óculos suos ad pópulum. 5. Pastor cognóvit oves suas. 6. Quid reliquísti in agro? 7. Deus misit ángelum suum ad Mariám. 8. Ave maris stella, Dei mater alma, ad te omnes gentes clamant. 9. Ancilla scripsit multas epístolas. 10. Quid abscondísti?

### Some 4th Conjugation Verbs with Irregular Perfects.

venire, *perfect* veni.

salire, *perfect* sálui, to leap.

aperire, *perfect* apériui.

sentire, *perfect* sensi, to feel.

11. Núntii venérunt ad regínam. 12. Servi aperuérunt portas civitátis. 13. Puer dolórem sensit. 14. Cur venísti? 15. Púeri saluérunt in aquam. 16. Quis apéruit portam domus? 17. Ancilla grátias Deo egit. 18. Núntii ad regínam óculos suos convertérunt. 19. Ángeli nos ab omni perículo defendérunt. 20. Jesus venit judicáre vivos et mórtuos.

## SECTION XXIX.

### Present Passive of 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

amor	I am loved or being loved	móneor	I am advised or being advised
amáris	thou art loved, etc.	monéris	thou art advised, etc.
amátur	he is loved, etc.	monétur	he is advised, etc.
amámur	we are loved, etc.	monémur	we are advised, etc.
amámini	you are loved, etc.	monémini	you are advised, etc.
amántur	they are loved, etc.	monéntur	they are advised, etc.

## EXERCISE LVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

paúperes (*plur.*), the poor. a (*or ab*), with *Abl.*, by.

1. Amámur a matre nostrâ.
2. Púeri monéntur a magístro.
3. Exaltámur a Deo.
4. Paúperes adjuvántur a nobis.
5. Puéllae laudántur a regínâ.
6. María amátur ab ómnibus géntibus.
7. Conturbámini ab inimícis vestris.
8. Puéllae parvae terréntur verbis\* magístri.
9. Núntius jubétur veníre ad regínam.
10. Deus timétur ab homínibus.
11. Oculi nostri illuminántur a Deo.
12. Adjuvámur a próximis nostris.
13. Paúperes adjuvántur a mínistris regínae.
14. Verba regis nuntiántur pópulo.
15. Laudámur a magístris nostris.
16. Sapiéntes púeri non terréntur verbis magistrórum malórum.
17. Mulíeres laudántur a regínâ magnâ.
18. Epístola portátur a servo regínae.
19. Timémur a púeris parvis.
20. Rex vidétur a nobis.
21. Puéllae parvae terréntur flúctibus maris.
22. Liberámur a Deo.
23. Laudáris a magístro tuo.
24. Amor a matre meâ.
25. Timéris a filio tuo.
26. Monémini a regínâ.
27. Adjuvámur ab ángelis.
28. Pecúnia datur paupéribus.
29. Culpáris a mulíere.
30. Puélla vocátur a matre suâ.

## SECTION XXX.

## Present Passive of 3rd and 4th Conjugations.

regor	aúdió
régeris	aúdis
régitur	aúditur
régimur	aúdimur
regimini	aúdimini
regúntur	aúdiúntur

## EXERCISE LIX.

## VOCABULARY.

quóniam, since, that.  
 caro, carnis (*f.*), flesh.  
 peccáre, to sin.  
 nimis, exceedingly.

nox, noctis (*f.*), night.  
 mandáre, to give charge to, entrust.  
 salutáre, salutáris (*n.*), salvation.  
 longitúdo, longitúdinis (*f.*), length.

\* The preposition *ab*, *by*, is not inserted before things, only before persons: see page 114.

1. Protégimur ab ángelis. 2. Verba reginae audiúntur ab ómnibus. 3. Portae custodiúntur a servis. 4. Púeri puniúntur a magistro. 5. Núntius míttitur ad reginam. 6. Epístola scribitur a puellâ parvâ. 7. Quóniam in me sperávit, liberábo eum: prótegám eum, quóniam cognóvit nomen meum. 8. Longitúdine díerum replébo eum. 9. Osténdam pópulo salutáre meum. 10. Quóniam Ángelis suis mandavit de te, non debes timére. 11. Vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum. 12. Terra régitur a rege. 13. Alma mater, tu es stella maris. 14. Portae a servis aperíuntur. 15. Puer sepelítur a muliéribus. 16. Nimis peccávimus in conspéctu Dómini. 17. Credo in resurrectiónem\* carnis. 18. Nox est pulchra. 19. Peccávi nimis, meâ culpâ. 20. Ab Ángelis semper custodímur.

### SECTION XXXI.

#### Imperfect Passive Tenses of all Four Conjugations.

amábar	monébar	regébar	audiébar
amabáris	monebáris	regebáris	audiebáris
amabátur	monebátur	regebátur	audiebátur
amabámur	monebámur	regebámur	audiebámur
amabámini	monebámini	regebámini	audiebámini
amabántur	monebántur	regebántur	audiebántur

N.B.—The English of the Imperfect passive is *I was being loved*, or *I used to be loved*, etc.

#### EXERCISE LX.

1. Protegebámur a servis reginae. 2. A magistro monebámini. 3. Terra a rege regebátur. 4. Timebáris a puellis. 5. Paúperes adjuvabántur a muliéribus. 6. Portae a servis aperiebántur. 7. Fíliae reginae custodiebántur a militibus. 8. Monebámur a rege et reginâ. 9. Laudabámur a magistro. 10. Núntius mittebátur ad reginam. 11. Puéllae parvae terrebántur flúctibus maris. 12. Servi liberabántur a reginâ. 13. Oves custodiebantur a pastóre. 14. Epístola scribebátur a púero parvo. 15. Puéllae felices erant quóniam a matre laudabántur. 16. Servi mittebántur in civitátem a rege. 17. Deus laudátur ómnibus opéribus suis. 18. Dona dabántur paupéribus a filiis† regis. 19. Exaltámur a Deo. 20. Ópera mánuum nostrárum sunt bona.

\* In future words which can be guessed will not be given in the vocabularies.

† *Filiis* is Dative or Ablative plural of *filius*; the Dative and Ablative plural of *filia* being *filíabus*.

## SECTION XXXII.

## Future Passive Tenses of all Four Conjugations.

amábor	monébor	regar	audíar
amáberis	monéberis	regéris	audiéris
amábitur	monébitur	regétur	audiétur
amábimur	monébimur	regémur	audiémur
amabimini	monebimini	regémini	audiémini
amabúntur	monebúntur	regéntur	audiéntur

N.B.—English: *I shall be loved*, etc.

## EXERCISE LXI.

## VOCABULARY.

inclináre, to incline.  
vivere, to live.  
dormíre, to sleep.

auris, auris (*f.*), an ear.  
flos, floris (*m.*), a flower.  
únitas, unitátis (*f.*), unity.

1. Inclína, Dómine, ad me aurem tuam. 2. Qui vivit et regnat in unitáte Spíritus Sancti Deus, per ómnia saécula saeculórum. 3. Ánimae fidélium dormiunt in pace. 4. Verba magístri audiéntur ab ómnibus. 5. Portae custodiéntur a militibus et servis. 6. Protegémur ab Ángelis. 7. Deus ad nos aurem suam inclinábit. 8. Ab inimícis nostris conturbámur. 9. Paúperes adjuvabúntur a rege. 10. Portae aperiéntur a servis. 11. Vox tua non audiétur a pópulo. 12. Converté nos, Deus, in viam pacis. 13. Deus nobis dabit noctem quiétam. 14. In manus tuas comméndo spíritum meum. 15. Véritas mea et misericórdia mea cum sanctis. 16. In nómine meo exaltábitur cornu sanctorum. 17. Ignem veni mittere in terram. 18. Dómine, Deus salutis meae, in die et nocte ad te clamávi. 19. Benedictus es, Dómine, Deus patrum nostrórum, et laudábilis et gloriósus in saécula. 20. Benedictum et sanctum est nomen glóriæ tuæ, et laudábile et gloriósum in saécula. 21. Ego clamávi, quóniam exaudivísti me, Deus: incliná aurem tuam, et exáudi verba mea. 22. Sancti tui, Dómine, benedícet te, et glóriam regni tui dicent. 23. Regína ornábitur a puéllis multis flóribus. 24. Puélla parva dormiébat. 25. Vidébimus multos flores in agris. 26. Quis mittétur ad civitátem? 27. Nomen Dómini laudábitur ab ómnibus géntibus. 28. Culpáberis a magístro. 29. Timéberis a púeris parvis. 30. Non laudábor a rege.

## SECTION XXXIII.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives are compared in Latin by adding **-ior** to the stem to form the **Comparative**, and **-issimus** for the **Superlative**: e.g., **longus** (stem **long-**), **longior**, **longissimus**; **tristis** (stem **trist-**), **tristior**, **tristissimus**.

## Declension of Comparative.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nominative ..	<b>tristior</b>	<b>tristius</b>	<b>tristióres</b>	<b>tristióra</b>
Vocative ..	<b>tristior</b>	<b>tristius</b>	<b>tristióres</b>	<b>tristióra</b>
Accusative ..	<b>tristiórem</b>	<b>tristius</b>	<b>tristióres</b>	<b>tristióra</b>
Genitive ..	<b>tristióris</b>	<b>tristióris</b>	<b>tristiórum</b>	<b>tristiórum</b>
Dative ..	<b>tristióri</b>	<b>tristióri</b>	<b>tristióribus</b>	<b>tristióribus</b>
Ablative ..	<b>tristióre</b>	<b>tristióre</b>	<b>tristióribus</b>	<b>tristióribus</b>

N.B.—The superlative is declined in the same way as ordinary 2nd Declension Adjectives in **-us**.

## EXERCISE LXII.

## VOCABULARY.

**altus**, high, tall, deep.

**purus**, pure.

**castus**, chaste.

**quam**, than (*followed by same case as that which precedes it*).

**paráre**, to prepare.

1. Mater est tristior quam filia. 2. Nuntium velocissimum ad civitatem mittam. 3. Nox sicut dies illuminabitur. 4. Virgo prudentissima, ora pro nobis. 5. Laudabimus nomen Dei Altissimi. 6. Virgo castissima et purissima, ora pro nobis. 7. Soror est altior quam\* frater. 8. Parabit vias Domini. 9. Manus tua tenebit me. 10. Quid est pulchrius quam virtus? 11. Maria est potentissima omnium sanctorum. 12. Quis est pulchrior quam soror tua? 13. Quid est tristius quam facies magistri? 14. Frater tuus est sapientissimus omnium magistrorum.

\* Direct comparison may also be expressed by the Ablative without **quam**—e.g., **soror est altior fratre**.

15. Rex est poténtior quam regína. 16. María est puríssima vírginum. 17. Paráte viam Dómini. 18. Vénimus ad altíssimum montem. 19. Soror tua est púlchrior quam mea. 20. Verba sacerdotís sunt sapientióra verbis magístri.

Some Adjectives which are Compared Irregularly.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
bonus	mélior	óptimus
magnus	major	máximus
parvus	minor	mínimus
malus	pejor	péssimus
multus	plus*	plúrimus

N.B.—All Adjectives in -er form their Superlative by adding -rimus to the positive—*e.g.*, miser, misérrimus; pulcher, pulchérrimus, etc.

EXERCISE LXIII.

VOCABULARY.

**mundáre**, to cleanse.

**iniquus**, unjust.

**ímpius**, wicked.

**mundus**, clean (*Adj.*).

**creáre**, to create.

**ámplius** (*comp. adverb*), yet more.

**contra** (*Acc.*), before, against.

**aspérgere**, to sprinkle.

**hyssópum** (2), hyssop.

**iniquitas, iniquitátis** (*f.*), iniquity.

1. Quóniam iniquitátem meam ego cognóscó, et peccátum meum contra me est semper. 2. Aspérges me hyssópo et mundábor. 3. María est pulchérissima ómnium vírginum. 4. Ámplius lava me ab iniquitáte meâ. 5. Cor mundum crea in me, Dómine. 6. Docébo iníquos vias tuas, et ímpii ad te converténtur. 7. Púeri sunt pejóres quam puéllae. 8. Liber meus est mínimus ómnium librórum. 9. Quid est mélius quam ambuláre in viis Dómini? 10. Quis est óptimus puerórum? 11. Peccávi, meâ culpâ, meâ culpâ, meâ maximâ culpâ. 12. Os meum, Dómine, annuntiábit laudem tuam. 13. In mánibus suis Ángeli portábunt te. 14. Laudabámur a magístro sapientíssimo. 15. Regína donum servo misérrimo dabat. 16. Non nobis, Dómine, non nobis, sed nómini tuo da glóriam. 17. Tu solus sanctus, tu solus es altíssimus, Jesu Christe. 18. O sanctíssima Virgo María, ora pro nobis. 19. Quis est péssimus ómnium servórum? 20. Quis erat fidélior regi quam frater tuus?

\* The comparative singular of multus is only found in the neuter.

## SECTION XXXIV.

## Past Participles.

Latin has only one Past Participle, the **Passive Participle**. Verbs of the 1st Conjugation which are regular form their past participles by adding **-tus** to the present stem:

**amāre** (stem ama-), *past participle*, **amātus**.  
**laudāre** (stem lauda-), *past participle*, **laudātus**.

Regular verbs of the 2nd Conjugation form their past participles by removing the **e** of the stem, and adding **-itus**:

**monēre** (stem mone-), *past participle*, **mōnitus**.  
**terrēre** (stem terre-), *past participle*, **tērritus**.

These participles decline in the same way as ordinary 2nd Declension Adjectives in **-us**—*e.g.*:

**puer tērritus**, a terrified boy ; **puēlla tērrita**, a terrified girl.

The Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect Passive Tenses of all Verbs are formed from the past participle and the verb **esse**.

Perfect Passive of **AMĀRE**.

<b>amātus sum</b>	I was loved, or I have been loved
<b>amātus es</b>	thou wast loved, or thou hast been loved
<b>amātus est</b>	he was loved, or he has been loved
<b>amāti sumus</b>	we were loved, or we have been loved
<b>amāti estis</b>	you were loved, or you have been loved
<b>amāti sunt</b>	they were loved, or they have been loved

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## VOCABULARY.

**bibere**, to drink.      **potēstas**, **potestātis** (*f.*), power.

1. Dixit Jesus discipulis suis, Data est mihi omnis potēstas in coelo et in terrâ.
2. Puēllae parvae amātae sunt a matre et patre.
3. Quis culpātus est a magistro?
4. Cur laudātus es a reginâ?
5. Dixit Jesus, Qui manducat meam carnem, et bibit meum sāguinem, in me manet, et qui manducet me, vivet propter me.
6. Opus pūeri a magistro laudātum est.
7. Verba reginae culpāta sunt a rege.
8. Conturbāti sumus ab inimicis nostris.
9. Pecūnia data est paupēribus a puēllis.
10. Verba reginae nuntiāta sunt regi a servo.

Perfect Passive of **MONĒRE**.

mónitus sum	I was advised, <i>or</i> have been advised
mónitus es	thou wast advised, <i>or</i> hast been advised
mónitus est	he was advised, <i>or</i> has been advised
móniti sumus	we were advised, <i>or</i> have been advised
móniti estis	you were advised, <i>or</i> have been advised
móniti sunt	they were advised, <i>or</i> have been advised

11. Púeri térriti sunt verbis magístri. 12. Féminae a regínâ mónitæ sunt. 13. Domus aedificáta est a fratre meo. 14. Puél-lae parvæ térritæ sunt flúctibus maris. 15. Pópulus a rege mónitus est. 16. Púeri signo crucis a sacerdoté signáti sunt. 17. Cor meum et caro mea gaudebant in Deo vivo. 18. Exaltáta est sancta Dei Mater. 19. Hódie María Virgo ad coelos ascéndit; gaudéte, quia cum Christo regnat in aetérnum. 20. Benedictus es, Dómine, in firmaménto coeli, et laudábilis et gloriósus in saécula.

## SECTION XXXV.

Future-Perfect and Pluperfect Passive of **AMÁRE** and **MONĒRE**.

<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
amátus ero	amátus eram	mónitus ero	mónitus eram
amátus eris	amátus eras	mónitus eris	mónitus eras
amátus erit	amátus erat	mónitus erit	mónitus erat
amáti érimus	amáti erámus	móniti érimus	móniti erámus
amáti éritis	amáti erátis	móniti éritis	móniti erátis
amáti erunt	amáti erant	móniti erunt	móniti erant

N.B.—English of Future-Perfect Passive, *I shall have been loved*, etc.  
English of Pluperfect Passive, *I had been loved*, etc.

## EXERCISE LXV.

## VOCABULARY.

bene ( <i>adverb</i> ), well.	doctus, <i>past part.</i> of docére.
male ( <i>adverb</i> ), badly.	visus, <i>past part.</i> of vidére.
juxta ( <i>Acc.</i> ), near.	jussus, <i>past part.</i> of jubére.

1. Núntius jussus est veníre ad regínam. 2. Púeri a magístro bene docti sunt. 3. Rex visus est a fratre meo. 4. Male doctus

es. 5. Et ecce *Ángelus Dómini stabat juxta pastóres*. 6. *Ángeli dixerunt, Glória in altíssimis Deo et in terrâ pax homínibus bonae voluntátis*. 7. *Regína visa erat ab ómnibus puéllis*. 8. *Nisi a regínâ mónitus eris, ad regem non póteris veníre*. 9. *Quis doctus erat a magistro?* 10. *Visi eramus a muliéribus*. 11. *Nisi ad reginam venéritis, non adjuvabímmini*. 12. *Stabat Mater dolorósa juxta crucem*. 13. *Dícite nobis, púeri, quid vidístis in viis?* 14. *A filio ministri bene doctus eras*. 15. *Multae árbores in agris visae sunt*. 16. *Domus male aedificáta erat*. 17. *Bene mónitus eris*. 18. *Jussus es ad me veníre*. 19. *Visus es a me*. 20. *Bene docti erátis*.

### SECTION XXXVI.

#### Past Participles of 3rd and 4th Conjugation Verbs.

The past participles of 3rd Conjugation Verbs are mostly irregular. *Régere* has past participle *rectus*, and most verbs whose stem ends in *g* or *c* have *-ctus* in the past participle—*e.g.*, *dícere, dictus; dúcere, ductus; resúrgere, resurréctus*, etc.

Fourth Conjugation Verbs regularly form their past participles in *-itus*, as *audíre, audítus; puníre, púnitus*; but a few are irregular—*e.g.*, *sepelíre, sepúltus; aperíre, apértus*.

### EXERCISE LXVI.

#### VOCABULARY.

*relictus, past part. of relinqueré.*

*cógnitus, past part. of cognóscere.*

*convérsus, past part. of convértére.*

*missus, past part. of mittere.*

*scriptus, past part. of scribere.*

*actus, past part. of ágere.*

1. *Núntius missus est ad civitátem*. 2. *Liber ad reginam missus est*. 3. *Multae epístolae scriptae sunt*. 4. *Grátiae Deo actae sunt*. 5. *Púeri mali púniti erant*. 6. *Servi mórtui sepúlti erant*. 7. *Óculi ómnium ad regem convérsi erant*. 8. *Ovis a pastóre suo cógnita est*. 9. *Libri a fratre meo scripti sunt*. 10. *Verba regínae ab ómnibus audíta sunt*. 11. *Ánimae fidélium in vias pacis ductae sunt*. 12. *Portae civitátis a servis apértae erant*. 13. *Libri in agris relictí sunt*. 14. *Puél-la a muliere vocáta erat*. 15. *Parátum est cor meum, Dómine*. 16. *Si vocábor a feminâ, non audíam*. 17. *Stella in coelo a pastóribus visa est*. 18. *Servus ad regem ductus erat*. 19. *Hódie epístola scripta erit*. 20. *Conturbáti sumus ab inimícis nostris*.

## SECTION XXXVII.

## Personal Pronouns.

	First Person.		Second Person.		Third Person.
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular and Plural.
Nominative	ego	nos	tu	vos	—
Vocative ..	—	—	tu	vos	—
Accusative..	me	nos	te	vos	se
Genitive ..	mei	nostri*	tui	vestri*	sui
Dative ..	mihi	nobis	tibi	vobis	sibi
Ablative ..	me	nobis	te	vobis	se

N.B.—*se* is the Reflexive 3rd Personal Pronoun, and means himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

## EXERCISE LXVII

## VOCABULARY.

*nemo, nēminis*, † no one.  
*etiam*, even, also.  
*hic* (*adverb.*), here.

*memor, mēmoris* (*Adj.*), mindful  
 (*followed by Genitive*).  
*immemor*, forgetful (*Genitive*).

1. Ego sum resurrectio et vita: qui credit in me, etiam si mortuus fuerit, vivit. 2. Dominus est memor nostri. 3. Quis immemor vestri erit? 4. Tibi gratias agimus, Domine, propter magnam gloriam tuam. 5. Quis laudat se? 6. Nemo semper culpatur se. 7. Omnia optima sibi semper dat. 8. Nemo est immemor sui. 9. Domine, bonum est nobis hic esse. 10. Levaverunt oculos suos, sed nēminem viderunt, nisi solum Jesum. 11. Dominus nos ducet in montem sanctissimum suum. 12. Tibi dabo multa dona. 13. Mulieres erant immemores sui. 14. Puer vidit se in aqua fluminis. 15. Quis mihi librum dabit? 16. Te hic cras videbimus. 17. Orabo pro vobis. 18. Nemo est memor mei. 19. Memor tui ero. 20. Soror mea ad te cras veniet.

\* The forms *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used after numbers, or adjectives denoting number—*e.g.*, *multi nostrum*, many of us; *tres vestrum*, three of you. This is called the Partitive Genitive. The forms *nostri* and *vestri* are used for the Objective Genitive.

† The Genitive of *nemo* is rarely used.

Pronouns (*Continued*).

## Third Person.

	he, she, it.					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nominative ..	is*	ea	id	ei	eae	ea
Accusative ..	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
Genitive ..	eius	eius	eius	eórum	eárum	eórum
Dative ..	ei	ei	ei	eis	eis	eis
Ablative ..	eo	ea	eo	eis	eis	eis

## EXERCISE LXVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

adésse, to be present.

offéndere, to dash, stumble.

1. Si ambuláverit in nocte, offéndit, quia lux non est in eo. 2. Magister adest, et vocat te. 3. Jesus vocávit eum ad se. 4. Si veritátem dico vobis, quare non créditis mihi†? 5. Dicunt ei, Dómine, veni et vide. 6. Dicit eis, ecce homo. 7. In mundo erat, et mundus eum non cognóvit. 8. Deo grátias agam in conspéctu omnis pópuli ejus. 9. Dóminus exaúdiat me, si clamávero ad eum. 10. Multi dicunt, Quis osténdit nobis bona? 11. Grátias ágimus Deo propter magnam glóriam ejus. 12. Mitémus núntium ad eos. 13. Per signum crucis, líbera eos, Dómine. 14. Deum adorámus et Fílium ejus. 15. Apéruit os suum et docébat eos. 16. Vídimus mulíeres et fílias eárum. 17. Si puer bonus erit, librum ei dabo. 18. Qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sánguinem, in me manet, et ego in eo. 19. Dixit ei Jesus, Quia vidísti me, Thoma, credidísti: beati qui non vidérunt, et credidérunt. 20. Stabant juxta crucem Jesu mater ejus, et soror matris ejus María Cléophae, et María Magdaléne.

\* is, ea, id, may also be used as a demonstrative adjective = *that*: e.g., is puer, *that boy*.

†Credo is usually followed by the dative case.

## SECTION XXXVIII.

## The Demonstrative HIC.

	HIC, HAEC, HOC : this.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative ..	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae	haec
Accusative ..	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	haec
Genitive ..	hujus	hujus	hujus	horum	harum	horum
Dative ..	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
Ablative ..	hoc	hac	hoc	his	his	his

N.B.—Hic is used both substantivally and adjectivally—*e.g.*, hic = *this man*; hic puer = *this boy*; haec = *these things*, or *this*; haec opera = *these works*.

## EXERCISE LXIX.

1. Hic est panis qui de coelis descendit. 2. Qui manducat hunc panem vivet in aeternum. 3. Hoc est testimonium, quoniam vitam aeternam dedit nobis Deus. 4. Haec vita in Filio ejus est. 5. Hic est qui venit per aquam et sanguinem, Jesus Christus: non in aqua solum, sed in aqua et sanguine. 6. Multa non sunt scripta in libro hoc. 7. Hi sunt qui te amant. 8. Quis est hic puer qui haec dicit? 9. Hic est liber hujus pueri. 10. Manebimus multas dies in hac civitate. 11. Libri horum puerorum sunt magni. 12. Propter hoc eum non vidi. 13. Magister eum laudavit his verbis. 14. Innocens ego sum a sanguine justii hujus. 15. Hae puellae sunt bonae. 16. Libros his pueris dabo. 17. In his temporibus haec non possumus dicere. 18. Non est hic\*: surrexit sicut dixit. 19. Hunc puerum non culpo. 20. Laudabo has puellas.

\* Remember that hic can also mean *here*.

## SECTION XXXIX.

## The Demonstrative ILLE.

	ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD : that.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative ..	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Accusative ..	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Genitive ..	illius	illius	illius	illórum	illárum	illórum
Dative ..	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Ablative ..	illo	illo	illo	illis	illis	illis

N.B.—*Ille*, like *hic*, is used both substantively and adjectively—*e.g.*, *ille* = *that man*; *ille puer* = *that boy*; *illa* = *those things*, or *that*; *illa opera* = *those works*. *Ille* often means simply *he*, etc.

## EXERCISE LXX.

1. *Beátus est ille servus qui Dóminum amat.* 2. *In illo témpore dixit Jesus discipulis suis, Data est mihi omnis potestas in coelo et in terrâ.* 3. *Ille qui mandúcat meam carnem, et bibit meum sánguinem, in me manet, et ego in illo.* 4. *In diébus illis descendit Ángelus Dei de coelo.* 5. *Quis erat ille puer qui illud dixit?* 6. *Illos libros his púeris dábitis.* 7. *Servus illius est bonus, sed servus meus est malus.* 8. *Cur illud dixisti?* 9. *Núntius venit ad reginam et dicit illi, Exercitus victus est.* 10. *Illum amámus, et illi multa dona damus.* 11. *Illam puéllam laudámus, sed hunc púerum culpámus.* 12. *Hi servi sunt boni, illi mali.* 13. *Jesus venit ad discipulos suos et manducávit cum illis.* 14. *Rex púerum vidit et vocávit eum.* 15. *Dóminum amo: in illo est auxiliú meum.* 16. *Illud opus non póssumus suscípere.* 17. *Cujus liber est ille?* 18. *Sacérdos ad altáre venit et ante illud stat et orat.* 19. *Quis est pater illórum puerórum?* 20. *Da illos libros illi puéllae.*

## SECTION XL.

## Present Participles.

Present participles of all four Conjugations are formed by removing the **-bam** of the **Imperfect** tense and adding **-ns**—*e.g.* :

**amábam, amans, loving; audiébam, aúdiens, hearing, etc.**

The present participle is declined like **potens**.

N.B.—The verb *to be* has no present participle.

## EXERCISE LXXI.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>procidere, to fall down.</b>	<b>antecedere, to go before.</b>
<b>oriens, the east, orient.</b>	<b>intrare, to enter.</b>
<b>Judaéi, the Jews.</b>	<b>invenire, to find.</b>
<b>ubi, where.</b>	<b>magus (2), a wise man.</b>
<b>natus, born.</b>	<b>turbare, to trouble.</b>

1. Ecce magi ab oriénte venérunt dicétes, Ubi est qui natus est rex Judaeórum? 2. Vidimus stellam ejus in oriénte, et vénimus adoráre eum. 3. Aúdiens haec, Heródes rex turbátus est. 4. Mittens illos in Bétlehem, dixit, Inveníte púerum. 5. Ecce stella antecedebat eos. 6. Vidétes stellam magi gaudébant. 7. Intrátes domum invenérunt púerum cum Mariá, matre ejus, et procidétes adoravérunt eum. 8. Docéte omnes gentes, baptizátes hómínes in nómine Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti. 9. Omnis qui credit quóniam Jesus est Christus a Deo natus est. 10. In diébus illis ecce ego vidi ángelum ascendéntem ab oriénte, habéntem signum Dei vivi. 11. Ángeli procidétes in conspéctu throni Dei in fácies suas, adoravérunt Dóminum. 12. Apériens os suum docebat pópulum. 13. Omnes clamábant, dicétes, Hosánna filio David.\* 14. Videns illum, in fácíem suam prócidit. 15. Ego vox clamántis in desérto. 16. Vidébitis Fílium hómínis veniétem cum potestáte magnâ. 17. Jesus vidit Mariam, matrem suam, stantem juxta crucem. 18. Homo véniens adorábat illum.

## SECTION XLI.

## Future Participles.

The **Future Participle** of any verb is regularly formed by inserting **-ur** before the termination **-us** of the **past participle**—*e.g.* :

**amátus, amatúrus; audítus, audítúrus.**

\* Many proper nouns which are taken straight from the Hebrew are not declined in Latin; hence *filio David* means *to the son of David*.

The Future Participle is an **active** participle, and is usually to be translated by **about to love, going to love, etc.**—*e.g.* :

*Puer auditurus erat verba patris.*

*The boy was about to listen to the words of his father.*

## EXERCISE LXXII.

### VOCABULARY.

**revólvere**, to roll back.  
**accédere**, to approach.

**íterum**, again.  
**stupefactus**, amazed.

**fúgere**, to flee.  
**excélsus**, most high.  
**tres**, three (*neuter, tria*).

**expectáre**, to look for, wait for.  
**super** (*with Acc. and Abl.*), upon, over,  
above.

**lapis, lápidis** (*m.*), a stone.  
**autem** (*placed after first word in phrase*),  
but.

**unus**, one.  
**prae** (*with Abl.*), before, for.  
**testimónium**, testimony, witness.

1. Et íterum ventúrus est cum glóriâ judicáre vivos et mórtuos.  
2. Viri stabant stupefacti, audiéntes vocem, néminem autem vidéntes. 3. Omnes gentes vénient dicéntes, Glória tibi, Dómine.  
4. Et expécto resurrectiónem mortuórum et vitam ventúri saéculi. 5. Tres sunt qui testimónium dant in coelo: Pater, Verbum, et Spíritus Sanctus: et hi tres unum sunt. 6. Et tres sunt qui testimónium dant in terrâ: Spíritus, et aqua et sanguis: et hi tres unum sunt. 7. Discípuli venérunt ad Jesum, dicéntes, Tu es qui ventúrus es? 8. Quis osténdit vobis fúgere a venturâ irâ? 9. Benedícta es tu, Virgo María, a Dómino Deo excélsio, prae ómnibus muliéribus super terram. 10. Íterum vidébo vos, et gaudébit cor vestrum. 11. Ángelus Dómini descéndit de coelo, et accédens revólvit lápidem, et sedébat super eum.

## SECTION XLII.

### Third Conjugation Verbs in -io.

Some 3rd Conjugation verbs form their present indicative (1st person singular) in **-io**, and keep the **i** throughout the present, future, and imperfect tenses—*e.g.* :

**cápere**, to take.

Pres. Indic.: **cápio, capis, capit, cápimus, cápitís, cápiunt.**

Future: **cápiam, cápies, cápiet, etc.**

Imperfect: **capiébam, capiébas, etc.**

Some verbs like *cápere* :

*eripio*\* (*perf. erípui*), to snatch away, deliver.  
*fácio* (*perf. feci*), to do, make.  
*accípío* (*perf. accépi*), to receive.  
*fúgio* (*perf. fugi*), to flee.  
*respicio* (*perf. respéxi*), to look, regard.  
*despicio* (*perf. despéxi*), to despise, look down on.  
*aspicio* (*perf. aspéxi*), to look, see.  
*suscípío*, (*perf. suscépi*), to receive, undertake.

### EXERCISE LXXIII.

#### VOCABULARY.

*sacrifico* (1), to sacrifice.  
*hóstia*, a victim, host.  
*injúria*, injury.  
*condo* (3), to lay up.  
*mundus* (2), the world.  
*scio* (4), to know.  
*igitur*, therefore.

*calix, cálicis* (*m.*), cup, chalice.  
*revolútus*, rolled back.  
*monuméntum*, grave, sepulchre.  
*salutare, salutáris* (*n.*), salvation.  
*divítiae*, riches.  
*respóndeo* (2), to answer.  
*finis, finis* (*m.*), end, border.

1. *Adjutórium nostrum in nómine Dómini, qui fecit coelum et terram.* 2. *Clamábit ad me, et ego exaúdiam eum; erípíam eum et glorificábo eum.* 3. *Cálicem salutáris accípíam, et sacrificábo hóstiam laudis.* 4. *Osténde nobis, Dómine, misericórdiam tuam, et salutáre tuum da nobis.* 5. *Et ille respóndens dixit, Amíce, non fácio tibi injúriam.* 6. *Accípíte et manducáte ex hoc omnes.* 7. *Et Verbum caro factum est.* 8. *Quis revólvet lápidem ab óstio monuménti?* 9. *Et respiciéntes vidérunt lápidem revolútum.* 10. *Hic vir, despiciens mundum, condit divítias in coelo.* 11. *Nunc scio quia misit Dóminus Ángelum suum, et erípuit me de manu Heródis.* 12. *Déxtera Dómini fecit virtútem, déxtera Dómini exaltávit me.* 13. *Et venit Jesus, et accipit panem, et dat eis.* 14. *Imponébant manus super illos, et accipiébant Spíritum Sanctum.* 15. *Viri Galilaéi, cur statis aspiciéntes in coelum?* 16. *Vidérunt omnes fines terrae salutáre Dei nostri.* 17. *Íterum relínquo mundum et vado ad Patrem.* 18. *Veníte, gentes, et adoráte Dóminum: quia hódie descéndit lux magna super terram.* 19. *Vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum.* 20. *Christus est Hóstia divína.*

\* The 1st pers. sing. pres. indic. will henceforth be given in the vocabularies instead of the infin., with a figure in brackets to show the conjugation.

## SECTION XLIII.

## Prohibitions.

Prohibitions are expressed in Latin by **noli** (plural **nolite**) with the Infinitive. **Noli** is the imperative of the verb **nolo**, *to be unwilling*, and the prohibition really means: *be unwilling to do this*: **noli hoc fácere**—*i.e., do not do this*.

## EXERCISE LXXIV.

## VOCABULARY.

**fac**, imperative of **fácio**.  
**dic**, imperative of **dico**.  
**duc**, imperative of **duco**.  
**inorédulus**, faithless.  
**enim**, for.  
**salvus**, safe, whole.

**tango** (3) (*perf. tétigi*), to touch.  
**oblátio**, **oblátionis** (*f.*), oblation.  
**nondum**, not yet.  
**vexo** (1), to trouble, vex.  
**condémno** (1), to condemn.  
**occido** (3), to kill.

1. Dixit eis, **Súrgite**, et **nolite timére**. 2. **Levántes** autem **óculos** suos **néminem** **vidérunt** nisi **solum** **Jesum**. 3. Dixit ei **Jesus**, **Noli** me **tángere**, **nondum** enim **ascénderé** ad **Patrem** meum. 4. **Vade** autem ad **fratres** meos, et **dic** eis, **Ascénderé** ad **Patrem** meum et **Patrem** vestrum. 5. **Venit** ígitur **María** **Magdaléne** **annúntians** **discípulis**, **Vidi** **Dóminum**, et **haec** dixit mihi. 6. **Pax** vobis: **ego** sum, **nolite timére**. 7. **Haec** **fac** pro me. 8. **Noli** **vexáre** illum. 9. **Hanc** ígitur **oblátionem** **accípe**, **Dómine**. 10. **Nolite** **judicáre**, et non **judicabímmini**; **nolite** **condemnáre**, et non **condem nabímmini**. 11. **Noli** esse **incrédulus**, sed **fidélis**. 12. **Deus** tibi **osténdet** **divítias** **glóriae** suae. 13. **Dico** servo meo, **Fac** hoc, et **facit**. 14. **Exaltábo** te, **Dómine**, quóniam **suscepísti** me. 15. **Nolite** **timére** eos qui **occidunt** corpus, **ánimam** autem non **possunt** **occidere**. 16. **Dómine**, **éripe** **ánimam** meam; **salvum** me **fac** propter **misericórdiam** tuam. 17. **Fides** tua, **filia**, **salvam** te **fecit**. 18. **Jesus** dixit illi, **Noli** **fere**. 19. **Ecce** **óculi** **Dómini** super **timéntes** eum, **sperántes** in **misericórdiâ** ejus. 20. **Jesus** **salvum** **fáciét** **pópulum** suum a **peccátis** eórum.

## SECTION XLIV.

## Deponent Verbs.

There are many verbs in Latin which have a passive form, but an active meaning. These are called **deponent verbs**. With the exception of the present and future participles, they have no

active forms at all. They can never be used with a passive meaning. Thus the verb *sequor* means *I follow* and it is impossible to say "I am being followed" in Latin; the phrase has to be turned round into an active form: "someone is following me." These deponent verbs are found in all four conjugations, both regular and irregular. The following are some of the most common deponents:

<i>precor</i> (1), <i>perf. precátus sum</i> , I pray.
<i>laetor</i> (1), <i>perf. laetátus sum</i> , I rejoice.
<i>confíteor</i> (2), <i>perf. conféssus sum</i> , I confess, I give praise.
<i>miséreor</i> (2), <i>perf. misértus sum</i> , I have pity on, I have mercy on.
<i>sequor</i> (3), <i>perf. secútus sum</i> , I follow.
<i>loquor</i> (3), <i>perf. locútus sum</i> , I speak.
<i>mórior</i> (3), <i>perf. mórtuus sum</i> , I die.
<i>nascor</i> (3), <i>perf. natus sum</i> , I am born.
<i>pátior</i> (3), <i>perf. passus sum</i> , I suffer.

## EXERCISE LXXV.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>lingna</i> , a tongue.	<i>exsúlto</i> (1), to exult, rejoice.
<i>proptérea</i> , therefore.	<i>turba</i> , a crowd.
<i>ergo</i> , therefore.	<i>nátio, natiónis</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), a nation.
<i>psalmus</i> , a psalm.	<i>várius</i> , various, divers.
<i>parábola</i> , a parable.	<i>plebs, plebis</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), people.

1. Confítebor tibi, Deus meus. 2. Discípuli Jesum sequebántur. 3. Hómines iníqui moriéntur. 4. Hæc locútus sum. 5. Laetántur coeli et exsúltat terra ante fáciem Dómini, quia venit. 6. Puer natus est nobis, et filius datus est nobis. 7. Precor beátam Mariam, semper Vírginem, oráre pro me ad Dóminum Deum nostrum. 8. Turba magna sequebátur Jesum in civitátem. 9. Omnis qui vivit, et credit in me, non moriétur in aetérnum. 10. Et accédens Jesus locútus est eis, dicens, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo et in terrâ. 11. Christus passus est pro nobis. 12. Loquebántur Apóstoli linguis variis. 13. Sub Póntio Piláto passus et sepúltus est. 14. Loquébar de testimóniis tuis in conspéctu regum. 15. Ecce, nos reliquimus ómnia et secúti sumus te: quid ergo erit nobis? 16. Proptérea confítebor in natió nibus, Dómine, et nómini tuo psalmum dicam. 17. In virtúte tuâ, Dómine, laetábitur justus, et super salutáre tuum exsultábit. 18. Laetábitur justus in Dómino, et sperábit in eo. 19. Confíteor Deo omnipoténti quia peccávi, meâ culpâ, meâ culpâ, meâ máximâ culpâ. 20. Hæc ómnia locútus est Jesus in parábolis ad turbas.

**Semi-Deponent Verbs.**

A very few verbs are semi-deponent—*i.e.*, have a passive form in the perfect tenses:

**atdeo, to dare, has perfect ausus sum.**  
**gaudeo, to rejoice, has perfect gavisus sum.**  
**fido, to trust, has perfect fisus sum.**

**SECTION XLV.****The Present Infinitive and Imperative Passive.**

The Present Infinitive Passive of verbs of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conjugations is formed by changing the *-e* at the end of the present Infinitive Active into *i*—*e.g.* :

Active: **amare**; Passive: **amari**; so: **monere, moneri**; **audire, audiri**.  
 Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation drop out the *-er-*, but end in *i*, like the rest.  
 Active: **regere**; Passive: **regi**.

The Present Infinitive, therefore, of all Deponent Verbs is formed in this way—*e.g.* :

**precari, to pray**; **confiteri, to confess**; **sequi, to follow**; **mori, to die**; **pati, to suffer, etc.**

The 2nd Person Singular of the Present Imperative Passive is formed in exactly the same way as the Present Infinitive Active—*e.g.* :

**amare** means (1) *to love*, or (2) *be thou loved*.  
**regere** means (1) *to rule*, or (2) *be thou ruled*.

Hence **sequere** means *follow*; **loquere** means *speak*, etc.

The 2nd Person Plural Imperative Passive is formed in exactly the same way as the Present Indicative Passive: **amamini** means (1) *ye are loved*, or (2) *be ye loved*. Hence **sequimini** means (1) *ye follow*, or (2) *follow ye*.

**EXERCISE LXXVI.****VOCABULARY.**

**extendo** (3), to stretch out.  
**incipio** (3), to begin.  
**modo**, now.  
**lex, legis** (*f.*), law.  
**interrogo** (1), to ask.

**volo**, I will (*perf. volui*).  
**vis**, thou wilt, or thou wishest.  
**leprosus** (2), a leper.  
**postea**, afterwards.  
**secundum** (*with Acc.*), according to, after.

1. Dixit Jesus Petro: Sequere me.
2. Regina coeli, laetare.
3. Bonum est confiteri Domino.
4. Judaei dixerunt, Nos legem

habémus, et secúndum legem debet mori. 5. Fílius ejus incipiébat mori. 6. Ecce, leprósus véniens adorábat Jesum, dicens, Dómine, si vis, potes me mundáre. 7. Et exténdens manum Jesus tétigit eum, dicens, Volo, mundáre. 8. Dicit ei Petrus, Dómine, quo vadis? Respóndit Jesus, Quo ego vado, non potes me sequi modo, sequéris autem póstea. 9. Dicit ei Petrus, Quare non possum te sequi modo? ánimam meam pro te ponam. 10. Nunc vado ad eum qui misit me; et nemo intérogat me, Quo vadis?

## SECTION XLVI.

## The Relative Pronoun.

	QUI, QUAE, QUOD: who.					
	Singular.			Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative ..	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Accusative ..	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Genitive ..	cujus	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dative ..	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ablative ..	quo	quâ	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

N.B.—The Relative agrees with its antecedent in number, person, and gender, but not in case; it takes its own case from its own phrase—e.g.:

**Puer quem vidi adest:** *the boy whom I saw is here.*

**Puer adest, cujus matrem vidi:** *the boy is here whose mother I saw.*

**Hic est servus a quo rex occisus est:** *this is the slave by whom the king was killed.*

## EXERCISE LXXVII.

## VOCABULARY.

óffero (3), to offer.  
sómnum, a dream.  
judícium, judgment.  
nix, nivis (*f.*), snow.  
sol, solis (*m.*), sun.  
nubes, nubis (*f.*), a cloud.  
appáreo (2), to appear.  
seórsum, apart.  
compláceo (2), to please.

procédo (3), to proceed, come forth.  
peto (3), to ask, seek.  
quaero (3), to seek, inquire.  
sermo, sermónis (*m.*), word, speech.  
ob (*with Acc.*), on account of, through.  
vestiméntum, raiment, clothing.  
assúmo (*perf. assúmpsi*) (3), to take up.  
obúmbro (1), to overshadow.  
egi (*perf. of ago*), I have done.

1. Audíte sómnum meum quod vidi. 2. Súscipe, sancta Trínitas, hanc oblatiónem quam tibi offérimus ob memóriam passiónis, resurrectiónis et ascensiónis Dómini nostri. 3. Spíritus Sanctus, quem mittet Pater in nómine meo, ille vos docébit ómnia. 4. Exaúdi, Dómine, vocem meam, quâ clamávi ad te. 5. Péttite, et accipiétis; quaérite, et inveniétis; pulsáte, et aperiétur vobis. 6. Ómnis enim qui petit áccipit, et qui quaerit invenit, et pulsánti aperiétur. 7. Qui non díligit me, sermónes meos non servat. 8. Et sermó quem audístis, non est meus, sed ejus qui misit me. 9. Venit hora in quâ omnes qui in monumentis sunt aúdiunt vocem Fílii Dei. 10. Et procédent, qui bona fecérunt, in resurrectiónem vitæ: qui autem mala egérunt, in resurrectiónem judícii.

11. In illo témpore, assúpsit Jesus Petrum et Jacóbum et Johánnem, fratrem ejus, et duxit illos in montem excésum seórsum: et transfigurátus est ante eos. Et resplénduit fácies ejus sicut sol: vestiménta autem ejus facta sunt alba sicut nix. Et ecce apparuérunt illis Moýses et Elías cum eo loquéntes. Respóndens autem Petrus, dixit ad Jesum, Dómine, bonum est nobis hic esse. Si vis, faciémus tria tabernácula, tibi unum, Moýsi unum, et Elíæ unum. Et ecce nubes lícida obumbrávit eos, et ecce, vox de nube dicens, Hic est Fílius meus dílectus, in quo mihi bene complácuí: audíte eum. Et audiéntes, discípuli procidérunt in fácies suas, et timuérunt. Et accédens, Jesus tétigit eos, dicens, Súrgite, et nolite timére. Levántes autem óculos suos néminem vidérunt, nisi solum Jesum. Et descendérunt illi de monte.—*St Matthew xvii, 9.*

## SECTION XLVII.

The Verb **IRE**: to go.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	
eo	ibo	ibam	ivi	or ii
is	ibis	ibas	ivisti	istis
it	ibit	ibat	ivit	iit
imus	ibimus	ibámus	ivimus	ivimus
itis	ibitis	ibátis	ivistis	ivistis
eunt	ibunt	ibant	ivérunt	ivérunt

N.B.—The Present Participle of *ire* is *iens* in the Nominative, but declines: *eúntem, eúntis, etc.*

## Compounds of Ire.

<b>éxéo</b> , to go out, go forth.	<b>tránseo</b> , to go across, to pass.
<b>ábeo</b> , to go away, depart.	<b>rédeo</b> , to go back, return.
<b>íneo</b> , to go in, enter.	<b>péreo</b> , to perish.
<b>intróeo</b> , to enter.	<b>círcúeo</b> , to go round.

## EXERCISE LXXVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>coena</b> , supper.	<b>praédico</b> (1), to preach, extol.
<b>sonus</b> , a sound.	<b>navis</b> , <i>navis</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), a ship.
<b>locus</b> , a place.	<b>fretum</b> , water, sea.
<b>ibi</b> , there.	<b>áridus</b> , dry, withered.
<b>úndecim</b> , eleven.	<b>usque</b> , right on, even, continually.
<b>dúbító</b> (1), to doubt.	<b>constituo</b> (3), to appoint, set.
<b>quidam</b> , certain, some.	<b>consummatio</b> , <b>consummationis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), consummation, end.

1. In illo témpore ibat Jesus in civitátem quae vocátur Naim, et ibant cum eo discípuli ejus, et turba magna. 2. Et vox de throno exívit, dicens, Laudáte Deum nostrum. 3. Quid exístis in desértum vidére? 4. María ábiit in civitátem et íniit in domum Zacharía. 5. Et íterum éxiens de finibus Tyri, venit ad mare Galiláeae. 6. Et dimísit eos et ábiit in montem oráre. 7. Ascendéntes in navem, abierunt in desértum locum seórsum. 8. Et introívit íterum in synagógam, et erat ibi homo habens manum áridam. 9. Eúntes in mundum univérsum, praedicáte ómnibus géntibus. 10. In omnem terram exívit sonus eórum, et in fines terrae verba eórum. 11. Exiérunt Jesus et discípuli ejus in montem Olivárum. 12. Et exiit hic sermo in univérsum terram illam. 13. Et dimíttens eos, ascéndit íterum in navem, et ábiit trans fretum. 14. Ibo in civitátem, et ibi coenam parábo. 15. Si abiero, et parávero vobis locum, íterum venio et accípíam vos ad me. 16. Eúntes renuntiáte Johánni quae audivístis et vidístis. 17. Dómine, salva nos, perímus. 18. Et circúibat Jesus totam Galiláeam, docens in synagógis. 19. Et ábiit Ananías, et introívit in domum, et impónens manus super eum, dixit, Saule, frater, Dóminus misit me. 20. Introíbo ad altáre Dei, ad Deum qui laetificat juventútem meam.

In illo témpore, úndecim discípuli abierunt in Galiláeam, in montem, ubi constitúerat illis Jesus. Et vidéntes eum, adoravérunt: quidam autem dubitavérunt. Et accédens, Jesus locútus est eis, dicens, Data est mihi omnis potéstas in coelo, et in terrâ. Eúntes ergo, docéte omnes gentes, baptizántes eos in nómine

Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti: docéntes eos serváre ómnia quae mandávi vobis. Et ecce, ego vobiscum sum ómnibus diébus, usque ad consummationem saéculi.—*St Matthew* xxviii, 16.

## SECTION XLVIII.

## The Present Subjunctive.

amáre.	monére.	régere.	audíre.	esse.
amem	móneam	regam	aúdiam	sim
ames	móneas	regas	aúdias	sis
amet	móneat	regat	aúdiat	sit
amémus	moneámus	regámus	audiámus	simus
amétis	moneátis	regátis	audiátis	sitis
ament	móneant	regant	aúdiant	sint

Passive: amer, améris, amétur, amémur, amémini, améntur, etc.

The Present Subjunctive may express the idea *let me love*, or *may I love*—e.g., *orémus*, *let us pray*; *fiat volúntas tua*, (*may*) *Thy will be done*.

## EXERCISE LXXIX.

## VOCABULARY.

matutínus (*adj.*), morning.  
inténdens, attentive.  
custódia, watch.  
líblum, lip.

fió (3), to be done, be made, become, be.  
deprecátio (*f.*), prayer, entreaty.  
novi (*perf. of nosco*), I know.\*  
volúntas, volúntátis (*f.*), will.

1. Ecce áncilla Dómini: fiat mihi secúndum verbum tuum.  
2. Fiant aures tuae intendétes in vocem deprecaciónis meae.  
3. A custodiâ matutínâ usque ad noctem speret Ísraël in Dómino.  
4. Fidélium ánimae per misericórdiam Dei requiescant in pace.  
5. Suscípíat Dóminus sacrificium de mánibus tuis ad laudem et glóriam nóminis sui. 6. Dóminus sit in corde tuo et in lábiis tuis. 7. Haec est dies quam fecit Dóminus: exsultémus et laetémur in eâ. 8. Adorémus in aetérnum sanctíssimum Sacraméntum. 9. Corpus Dómini nostri Jesus Christi custódiat ánimam tuam in vitam aetérnam. 10. Sperent in te omnes qui novérunt nomen tuum. 11. Pater noster, qui es in coelis, sanctificétur nomen tuum, advéníat regnum tuum, fiat volúntas tua, sicut in coelo et in terrâ. 12. Tenuísti manum dexteram meam, et in volúntáte tuâ deduxísti me, et cum glóriâ suscepísti me.

\* *nosco* means *I get to know*; therefore the perfect *novi* means *I have got to know*—i.e., *I know*.

## SECTION XLIX.

## The Pronoun IPSE.

The Pronoun *ipse* declines exactly like *ille*, except that the Neuter singular (Nominative and Accusative) ends in *-m* instead of *-d*: *ipsum*. It is used:

1. As an emphatic pronoun, meaning *self*: hence *ego ipse* means *I myself*; *múlier ipsa*, *the woman herself*; *púeri ipsi*, *the boys themselves*, and so on.

2. As a personal pronoun, meaning *he, she, it*—e.g., *ipsum vidi*, *I saw him*.

## EXERCISE LXXX.

## VOCABULARY.

*possídeo* (2), to possess.

*sí quis*, if anyone.

*ábnego* (1), to deny.

*tunc*, then.

*indígnus*, unworthy.

*negligéntia*, a failing.

*dignè*, worthily.

*competénter*, fitly.

*Evangélium*, gospel.

*pes*, *pedis* (*m.*), foot.

*circúmsto* (1), to stand round.

*nec*, and not.

*semetípsum*, himself.

*perdo* (3) (*perf. pérdidi*), to lose, destroy.

*mitis* (3*rd Decl. adj.*), gentle.

*immaculátus*, spotless, immaculate.

*offénsio*, *offensiónis* (*f.*), transgression.

*circumstántes*, those present.\*

*defúctus*, dead, departed.

*proficio* (3), to help, assist, profit.

*apud* (*with Acc.*), with, at.

*ut* (*followed by Subj.*), that, in order that.

*univérsus*, all.

*innumerábilis* (3*rd Decl. adj.*), countless.

1. *Ecce fáciam illos ut véniant et adórent ante pedes tuos.*  
 2. *Oráte, fratres, ut meum et vestrum sacrificium acceptábile fiat apud Deum Patrem omnipoténtem.* 3. *Dóminus sit in corde tuo et in lábiis tuis, ut dignè et competénter annúnties Evangélium suum, in nómine Patris, et Fílii, et Spíritus Sancti.* 4. *Tunc Jesus dixit, Pater, grátias ago tibi quóniam audísti me, ego autem sciébam quia semper me audis; sed propter pópulum qui circúmstat dixi, ut credant quia tu me misísti.* 5. *Súscipe, Sancte Pater, omnipótens aetérne Deus, hanc immaculátam hóstiám quam ego, indígnus fámulus tuus, óffero tibi Deo meo vivo et vero, pro innumerábilibus peccátis, et offensiónibus et negligéntiis meis, et pro ómnibus circumstántibus, sed et pro ómnibus fidélibus Christiánis vivis atque defúctis: ut mihi et illis proficiat ad salutem in vitam aetérnam.* 6. *Nunc dimíttis servum tuum, Dómine, secúndum verbum tuum in pace.* 7. *Quia vidérunt óculi mei salutáre tuum.* 8. *Quod parásti ante fácíem*

\* Literally, *those standing round*—present participle of *circumsto*.

ómnium populórum. 9. Lumen ad revelatióem géntium et glóriam plebis tuæ Israël. 10. Beáti paúperes spírítu: quóniam ipsórum est regnum coelórum. 11. Beáti mites: quóniam ipsi possidébunt terram. 12. Véritas mea et misericórdia mea cum ipso; et in nómine meo exaltábitur cornu ejus. 13. Tunc Jesus dixit discíplis suis, Si quis vult post me venire, ábneget semet-ípsam, et tollat crucem suam et sequátur me. 14. Qui enim volúerit ánimam suam salvam fácere, perdet eam; qui autem perdíderit ánimam suam propter me, invéniet eam. 15. Non turbétur cor vestrum: créditis in Deum, et in me crédite. 16. Non créditis quia ego in Patre, et Pater in me est? 17. Verba quæ ego loquor vobis, a me ipso non loquor, Pater autem in me manens, ipse facit ópera. 18. Gaudeámus et exsultémus, et demus glóriam Deo. 19. Sit nomen Dómini benedíctum ex hoc nunc, et usque in saéculum. 20. Pater vobis dabit Spírítum veritátis, quem mundus non potest accíperere, quia non videt eum nec scit eum; vos autem cognoscétis eum, quia apud vos manébit, et in vobis erit.

## SECTION L.

## The Imperfect Subjunctive.

The Imperfect Subjunctive of any verb is formed by adding the endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**, on to the Present Infinitive Active—*e.g.*, Infinitive, **amare**; Imperfect Subjunctive, **amárem, amáres, amáret, amarémus, amarétis, amarent**. So **audírem, audíres**, etc. The Passive is formed in the same way, by adding the endings **-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -mini, -ntur**—*e.g.*, **amárer, amaréris**, etc.

## EXERCISE LXXXI.

## VOCABULARY.

comprehéndo (3), to comprehend.	ténebrae ( <i>plural</i> ), darkness.
sine ( <i>with Abl.</i> ), without.	perhíbeo (2), bear, render.
nihil, nothing.	próprius, his own, belonging to.
recipio (3), to receive.	lúceo (2), to shine.
quotquot, as many as.	feri ( <i>infin. of fero</i> ), to be made, become.
neque, nor, and not ( <i>same as nec</i> ).	ex ( <i>with Abl.</i> ), from, of, out of.

In princípío erat Verbum, et Verbum erat apud Deum, et Deus erat Verbum. Hoc erat in princípío apud Deum. Ómnia per ipsum facta sunt, et sine ipso factum est nihil quod factum est. In ipso vita erat, et vita erat lux hóminum; et lux in ténebris lucet, et ténebrae eam non comprehendérunt. Fuit homo

missus a Deo, cui nomen erat Johánnes. Hic venit in testimónium, ut testimónium perhiberet de lúmine, ut omnes créderent per illum. Non erat ille lux; sed ut testimónium perhiberet de lúmine. Erat lux vera, quae illúminat omnem hóminem veniéntem in hunc mundum. In mundo erat, et mundus per ipsum factus est, et mundus eum non cognóvit. In própria venit, et sui eum non recepérunt. Quotquot autem recepérunt eum, dedit eis potestátem filios Dei fieri; his qui credunt in nómine ejus, qui non ex sanguínibus, neque ex voluntáte carnis, neque ex voluntáte viri, sed ex Deo nati sunt. Et Verbum caro factum est, et habitávit in nobis; et vídimus glóriam ejus, glóriam quasi Unigéniti a Patre, plenum grátiae et veritátis.\*—*St John i, 1.*

## EXERCISE LXXXII.

## VOCABULARY.

tento (1), to tempt.  
 diábolus, the devil.  
 jejúno (1), to fast.  
 quadraginta, forty.  
 státuo (3), to set, place.  
 deórsum, down.  
 ait, he says.  
 rursum, again.  
 ne (*with Subj.*), lest.

esúrio (4), to be hungry.  
 forte, haply, by chance.  
 tentátor, tempter.  
 iste (*like ille*), that or this.  
 valdē, very, exceedingly.  
 cado (3), to fall, fall down.  
 sérvio (4) (*with Dative*), to serve.  
 ministro (1), to minister.  
 soli (*Dative of solus*), alone, only.

In illo témpore ductus est Jesus in desértum a Spíritu, ut tentarétur a diábolo. Et jejunábat quadraginta diébus et quadraginta nóctibus, et póstea esúriit. Et accédens tentátor dixit ei, Si Fílius Dei es, dic ut lápidés isti panes fiant. Qui respóndens dixit, Scriptum est: Non in solo pane vivit homo, sed in omni verbo quod procédit de ore Dei. Tunc assúmpsit eum diábolus in sanctam civitátem, et státuit eum super pinnáculum templi, et dixit ei, Si Fílius Dei es, mitte te deórsum. Scriptum est enim: Quia Ángelis suis mandávit de te, et in mánibus tollent te, ne forte offéndas ad lápidem pedem tuum. Ait illi Jesus, Rursum scriptum est: Non tentábis Dóminum Deum tuum. Íterum assúmpsit eum diábolus in montem excélsum valdē: et osténdit ei ómnia regna mundi, et glóriam eórum, et dixit ei, Haec ómnia tibi dabo, si cadens adoráveris me. Tunc dicit ei Jesus, Vade Sátana: scriptum est enim: Dóminum Deum tuum adorábis, et illi soli sérvies. Tunc relíquit eum diábolus: et ecce ángeli accessérunt, et ministrábant ei.—*St Matthew iv, 1.*

\* *plenus* is sometimes followed by the Genitive case as well as by the Ablative; cf. English *full of* and *filled with*.

## SECTION LI.

## The Ablative Absolute.

The **Ablative Absolute** is a phrase consisting of a noun and a participle in the Ablative case, representing a subordinate clause in English. The translation of the phrase varies with the context, being temporal, causal, concessive, etc., as the occasion requires—*e.g.* :

*nobis audiéntibus, rex haec dixit, the king said this in our hearing, or while we were listening; rege mórtuo, pópulus lugébat, the people mourned because the king was dead.*

The Ablative Absolute is used very frequently in Latin owing to the want of a past participle active (except in deponent verbs). It is impossible, for example, to say in Latin, "having done this, he went away," because there is no word that means "having done." The phrase must, therefore, be turned passively, "this having been done," with both words in the Ablative: **hoc facto, ábiit.** The translation, however, should take the active form: *having done this, he went away.*

## EXERCISE LXXXIII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>quinque</b> , five.	<b>duóbus</b> ( <i>Dat. or Abl. of duo</i> ), two.
<b>ligo</b> (1), to bind.	<b>frango</b> (3) ( <i>perf. fregi</i> ), to break.
<b>piscis, piscis</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), fish.	<b>infúndo</b> (3), to pour in, infuse.
<b>in médio</b> , in the midst.	<b>quaesumus</b> , we beseech thee.
<b>claudio</b> (3), to shut.	<b>intúeor</b> (2), to behold, see, gaze at.
<b>clausus</b> ( <i>past part.</i> ), shut.	<b>recúmbo</b> (3), to recline (at table).
<b>somnus</b> , sleep.	<b>mens, mentis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), mind, soul.
<b>somni</b> ( <i>pl.</i> ), dreams.	<b>sto</b> ( <i>perf. steti</i> ) (1), to stand.
<b>apértus</b> , opened.	<b>divido</b> ( <i>perf. divisi</i> ) (3), to divide.

1. Relictis illis, in desértum ábiit. 2. Venit Jesus, jánuis clausis, et stetit in médio, et dixit, Pax vobis. 3. Sedénte Jesu super montem Olivéti, accessérunt ad eum discípuli. 4. Et ille, elevátis óculis in discípulos suos, dicébat, Beáti paúperes, quia vestrum est regnum Dei. 5. Defúncto Heróde, ecce Ángelus Dómini appáruit in somnis Joseph in Aegýpto. 6. Et accéptis quinque pánibus et duóbus piscibus, íntuens in coelum, benedíxit, et fregit panes, et dedit discípulis suis, ut pónerent ante eos; et duos pisces divisit ómnibus. 7. Grátiam tuam quaesumus, Dómine, méntibus nostris infúnde, ut qui, ángelo nuntiánte, Christi

Fili tui Incarnatióem cognóvimus, per PassiÓem Ejus et crucem ad ResurrectiÓnis glóriam perducámur. 8. Misereátur vestri\* omnípotens Deus, et, dimíssis peccátis vestris, perdúcat vos ad vitam aetérnam. 9. In illo témpore, recumbéntibus úndecim discípulis, appáruit illis Jesus. 10. Et Jesu baptizáto, et oránte, apértum est coelum.

## EXERCISE LXXXIV.

## VOCABULARY.

mane, in the morning, early.

ungo (3), to anoint.

jam, now, already.

invicem, one another.

stola, a robe.

cándidus, white.

quippe, for, in fact.

expavésco (3), to be affrighted.

una sabbatórum, the first day of the week.

emo (3) (*perf.* emi), to buy.

aróma, arómatis (*n.*), sweet spice.

óríor (4) (*perf.* ortus sum), to rise.

júvenis, júvenis (*m.*), a young man.

coopértus, clothed.

obstupésco (2) (*perf.* obstúpui), to be

amazed.

praecédo (3), to go before.

In illo témpore María Magdaléne, et María mater Jacóbi, et Salóme emérunt arómata, ut veniéntes úngerent Jesum. Et valdē mane unâ sabbatórum, véniunt ad monuméntum, orto jam sole. Et dicébant ad ívicem, Quis revólvet nobis lápidem ab óstio monuménti? Et respiciéntes vidérunt revolútum lápidem. Erat quippe magnus valdē. Et introëúntes in monuméntum, vidérunt júvenem sedéntem in dextris, coopértum stolâ cándidâ, et obstupuérunt. Qui dicit illis, Nolíte expavésce: Jesum quaéritis Nazarénum, crucifixum: surréxit, non est hic; ecce locus ubi posuérunt eum. Sed ite, dicite discípulis ejus et Petro, quia praecédit vos in Galilaéam: ibi eum vidébitis, sicut dixit vobis.—*St Mark* xvi, 1.

## SECTION LII.

## The Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding *-ssem* to the 1st person singular of the Perfect Indicative Active—*e.g.* :

amávi, amavissem; mónui, monuissem; rexi, rexissem, etc.

The tense is conjugated regularly—*e.g.* :

amavissem, amavissem, amavisset, amavissémus, amavissétis, amavissent.†

\* *misereor* governs the Genitive case, or sometimes the Dative.

† *-vi-* often drops out—*e.g.*, *amavissem* contracts to *amássem*; *audivissem* to *audíssem*; *transivissem* to *transíssem*, etc.

The Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the past participle of the verb, and the Imperfect Subjunctive of *esse*—*e.g.* :

*amátus essem, mónitus essem, etc.*

N.B.—*cum*, meaning *when*, is usually followed by the pluperfect subjunctive in reference to past time—*e.g.* :

*Cum haec dixisset, abiit, when he had said this, he went away.*

## EXERCISE LXXXV.

### VOCABULARY.

*occurro* (3), to meet, go to meet  
(with *Dative*).

*caecus*, blind.

*inde*, thence, from there, then.

*recédo* (3), to withdraw, depart.

*regio, regiónis* (*f.*), region, land.

*daemónium*, an evil spirit.

*centúrio, centuriónis* (*m.*), a centurion.

*appropínquo* (1), to come nigh, approach.

*et . . . et*, both . . . and.

1. *Cum descendisset Jesus de monte, secútae sunt eum turbae multae.* 2. *Cum autem Jesus introisset Caphárnaum, accessit ad eum centúrio.* 3. *Cum Magi audissent regem, abiérunt.* 4. *Et cum recessissent, ecce Ángelus Dei apparuit.* 5. *Cum appropinquasset Jesus ad Jerúsalem, et venisset ad montem Olivéti, tunc misit duos discipulos ad civitátem.* 6. *Videns Jesus turbas, ascéndit in montem, et cum sedisset, accessérunt ad eum discipuli.* 7. *Cum inde transisset, venit in synagógam.* 8. *Cum venisset trans fretum in regiónem illam, occurrerunt ei duo habéntes daemónia.* 9. *Cum jejúnasset quadragínta diébus et quadragínta nóctibus, póstea esúriit.* 10. *Cum autem venisset ad illum locum, accessérunt ad eum et caeci et infirmi.*

## SECTION LII (Continued).

N.B.—The Pluperfect Subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled condition in past time—*e.g.* :

*Si hoc fecisses, peccavisses, if you had done this, you would have sinned (implying, but you did not do it).*

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled condition in present time—*e.g.* :

*Si tu adesses, haec tibi dicerem, if you were here, I would tell you this (implying, but you are not here).*

## EXERCISE LXXXVI.

## VOCABULARY.

Pharisaeus, a pharisee.  
nescio (4), to know not.  
fur, furis (n.), a thief.  
alius, other.  
ullus, any.  
adhuc, still.  
odérunt, they hate.  
scitôte, know ye.  
perfôdio (3), to break open.

crucifigo (3), to crucify.  
utique, surely, certainly.  
trado (3), to deliver up, betray.  
adversum (with Acc.), against.  
pláceo (2), to please (with Dative).  
sino (3), to allow, suffer.  
qualis, what manner of.  
paterfamilias, the good man of the house.  
quâ horâ, at what hour.

1. Dómine, si fuisses hic, non esset mórtuus frater meus.  
2. Si adhuc homínibus placérem, Christi servus non essem.  
3. Pharisaeus autem dixit, Hic si esset prophéta, sciret utique quae et qualis est mûlier quae tangit eum. 4. Audístis quia ego dixi vobis: vado, et venio ad vos. Si diligerétis me, gauderétis utique, quia vado ad Patrem. 5. Vigiláte, quia nescítis quâ horâ Dóminus vester vénturus sit. Illud autem scitôte, quóniam, si sciret paterfamilias, quâ horâ fur ventúrus esset, vigiláret utique, et non síneret perfôdi domum suam. 6. Judaí dixerunt, Si non esset hic malefáctor, non tibi tradidissémus eum. 7. Si ópera non fecissem in eis, quae nemo álius fecit, peccátum non habérent, nunc autem et vidérunt et odérunt et me et Patrem meum. 8. Dicit ergo Pilátus, Mihi non lóqueris? Nescis quia potestátem habeo crucifigere te, et potestátem dimittere te? Respóndit Jesus, Non habéres potestátem adversum me ullam, nisi tibi datum esset desuper.

## SECTION LIII.

## The Perfect Subjunctive.

The Perfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding **-erim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint**, to the perfect stem of the verb—*e.g.*:

**amáverim, monúerim, réxerim, audíverim, etc.**

The Perfect Subjunctive Passive is formed from the past participle of the verb, and the present subjunctive of **esse**—*e.g.*:

**amátus sim, mónitus sim, etc.**

N.B.—The Subjunctive is often, though not always in Church Latin, used in an indirect question clause—*e.g.*:

*I shall ask him what he has done = eum rogábo quid fécerit.*

*I asked him what he had done = eum rogávi quid fecisset.*

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

## VOCABULARY.

coepérunt, they began.  
 vello (3), to pluck.  
 sabbato, on the sabbath.  
 quando, when.  
 quómo, how.  
 víolo (1), to break.

sata (*neut. pl.*), oorn, cornfields.  
 spica, an ear of oorn.  
 licet, it is lawful.  
 panes propositionís, loaves of proposition.  
 ómedo (3), to eat.  
 crimen, criminis (*n.*), blame, guilt.

In illo témpore ábiit Jesus per sata sabbato: discípuli autem ejus esuriéntes coepérunt vellere spicas, et manducáre. Phari-saéi autem vidéntes, dixerunt ei, Ecce discípuli tui faciunt quod non licet fácere sabbatis. At ille dixit eis, Non legístis quid fécerit David, quando esúriit, et qui cum eo erant: Quómo intrávit in domum Dei, et panes propositionís comédit, quos non licébat ei édere, neque his, qui cum eo erant, nisi solis sacer-dótibus? Aut non legístis in lege quia sabbatis sacer-dotes in templo sabbatum víolant, et sine crimine sunt?—*St Matthew xii, 1.*

SECTION LIII (*Continued*).

N.B.—The Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used, with **ne** or some other negative, to express a Prohibition—*e.g.* :

**Ne timéris, be not afraid.**

The Present Subjunctive is also used in this way in Church Latin—*e.g.* :

**Ne occidas, do not kill.**

## EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

conféstim, forthwith.  
 súscito (1), to raise up.  
 efficio (3), to cast out.  
 pótius, rather.  
 infirmus, sick, infirm.  
 ouro (1), to heal, care for.

praecipio (3), to enjoin, command.  
 pacífico (1), to make peaceful, grant peace to.  
 lepra, leprosy.  
 munus, múnneris (*n.*), gift, present.  
 coadúno (1), to unite, grant union to.  
 dignor (1), to vouchsafe.

1. Cum autem descendisset de monte, secútae sunt eum turbae multae; et ecce leprósus véniens, adorábat eum, dicens, Dómine, si vis, potes me mundáre. Et extendens Jesus manum, tétigit eum, dicens: Volo. Mundáre. Et conféstim mundáta est lepra ejus. Et ait illi Jesus: Vide, némini díxeris: sed vade, osténde te sacer-dóti, et offer munus, quod praecépit Moýses, in

testimónium illis. 2. Apóstolos misit Jesus, præcípíens eis, dicens, In viam géntium ne abiéritis, et in civitátes Samaritanórum ne intravéritis, sed pótius ite ad oves quæ perierunt domus Israël. 3. Dómine Jesu Christi, qui dixísti Apóstolis tuis, Pacem relínquo vobis, pacem meam do vobis: ne respicias peccáta mea, sed fidem Ecclésiæ tuæ: eámque\* secúndum voluntátem tuam pacificáre et coadunáre dignéris: Qui vivis et regnas Deus per ómnia saécula saeculórum.—*St Matthew viii, 1.*

## SECTION LIV.

### The Infinitive Mood.

The Present Infinitives, Active and Passive, have already been given. The Perfect Infinitive Active is formed by adding *-sse* to the Perfect Indicative, 1st person singular—*e.g.* :

*amávi, I have loved ; amavisse, to have loved ; so, rexi, rexisse, etc.*

The Perfect Infinitive Passive is formed from the Past Participle of the verb, and *esse* :

*amátus esse, to have been loved ; so, rectus esse, etc.*

The Future Infinitive Active is formed from the Future Participle and *esse*—*e.g.* :

*amatúrus esse, to be about to love ; so, rectúrus esse, etc.*

The Future Infinitive Passive is formed from the Supine† and *iri*‡—*e.g.* :

*amátum iri, to be about to be loved ; so, rectum iri, etc.*

N.B.—The Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitives are declinable, being composed of participles; the other four are indeclinable.

In Ecclesiastical Latin an Indirect Statement clause is usually expressed by some word such as **quóniam** or **quia**, which represents the English "that," and which is followed by the Indicative (or sometimes by the Subjunctive)—*e.g.* :

*Confíteor quia peccávi, I confess that I have sinned.*

\* *que* meaning *and* is attached to the end of a word, but is translated as though it preceded it—*e.g.*, *virí mulierésque, men and women.*

† The Supine is a verbal noun (indeclinable) formed similarly to the past participle, but ending in *-um*. It is seldom used in Latin (see Section LX).

‡ *iri* is the present Infinitive passive of the verb *eo, to go*, used impersonally.

The alternative construction, which is the only one allowed in Classical Latin, is sometimes used—viz., no word is used for “that,” the subject of the clause is put in the Accusative, and the verb in the Infinitive—e.g. :

“*They say that he is walking in the fields*” (*they say him to be walking, etc.*), dicunt eum in agris ambulare.

## EXERCISE LXXXIX.

## VOCABULARY.

phantásma, a phantasm.

unde, whence.

propterea, therefore.

puto (1), to think.

supra (with Acc.), above.

extra (with Acc.), outside, beyond.

obviam venio (with Dat.), to come to meet.

cito, quickly.

traho (3) (perf. traxi), to draw, drag.

aestimo (1), to think.

visio, visionis (f.), a vision.

prius, before.

1. Illi vidéntes eum ambulántem supra mare, putavérunt phantásma esse. 2. Bonum est nos hic esse. 3. Novi virtútem de me exiísse. 4. Et respondébant se nescíre unde esset. 5. Prop- térea obviam venit ei turba, quia audiérunt eum fecísse hoc signum. 6. Dícitis in Beélzebub ejícere me daemónia. 7. Trax- érunt Paulum extra civitátem, aestimántes eum mórtuum esse. 8. Mulíeres fuérunt ad monuméntum ante lucem, et non invénto corpore ejus venérunt dicéntes se etiam visiónem angelórum vidísse, qui dicunt eum vívere. 9. Spero autem in Dómino Jesu, me cito Timótheum míttre ad vos. 10. Símeon respónsum accéperat a Spírítu Sancto se non visúrum mortem nisi prius vidéret Christum Dóminum.

## EXERCISE XC.

## VOCABULARY

revélo (1), to reveal.

aut, or.

praevaléo (2), to prevail.

solvo (3), to loose.

solútus, past part. of solvo.

at, but.

alii . . . alii, some . . . others.

petra, a rock.

portae inferi, the gates of hell.

clavis, clavis (f.), a key.

quodóúmque, whatsoever.

pars, partis (f.), part, quarter.

In illo témpore venit Jesus in partes Caesaréae Philíppi, et interrogábat discipulos suos, dicens, Quem dicunt hómines esse Fílium hóminis? At illi dixerunt, Álii Johánnem Baptístam, álii autem Elíam, álii vero Jeremíam, aut unum ex Prophétis. Dicit illis Jesus, Vos autem quem me esse dícitis? Respóndens Simon Petrus, dixit, Tu es Christus, Fílius Dei vivi. Respóndens autem Jesus, dixit ei, Beátus es, Simon Bar Jona: quia caro et sanguis non revelávit tibi, sed Pater meus, qui in coelis est. Et

ego dico tibi, quia tu es Petrus, et super hanc petram aedificábo Ecclesiám meam, et portae ínferi non praevalébunt advérsus eam. Et tibi dabo claves regni coelórum. Et quodcúmque ligáveris super terram, erit ligátum et in coelis: et quodcúmque sólveris super terram, erit solútum et in coelis.—*St Matthew xvi, 13.*

## SECTION LV.

## Questions.

Questions are often written in Ecclesiastical Latin with nothing except the note of interrogation to show that the sentence has an interrogative form\*—*e.g.* :

*Pilátus vocávit Jesum et dixit ei : Tu es rex Judaeórum ? Pilate called Jesus, and said to him, Art thou the king of the Jews ?*

If the answer "yes" is expected, the question is introduced by the particle **nonne**—*e.g.* :

*Nonne hoc verum est ? surely this is true ?*

If the answer "no" is expected, the question is introduced by **num** or **numquid**—*e.g.* :

*Numquid hoc verum est ? surely this is not true ?*

## EXERCISE XCI.

## VOCABULARY.

**ardens**, burning.

**dum**, while.

**ambo**, both.

**fóvea**, a ditch.

**virtútes**, miracles.

**Scriptúra**, Scripture.

**faber, fabri (m.)**, a carpenter.

**custos, custódis (m.)**, a keeper.

**interficio (3)**, to kill.

**vultis**, you wish, you are willing.

**prophéto (1)**, to prophesy.

**cado (3)**, to fall.

1. Nonne hic est faber, filius Maríae, frater Jacóbi et Joseph et Judae et Simónis ? 2. Nonne et soróres ejus hic nobíscum sunt ? 3. Responderunt ergo Judaéi, et dixerunt ei, Nonne bene dícimus nos, quia Samaritánus es tu, et daemónium habes ? 4. Nonne cor nostrum ardens erat in nobis dum loquerétur in viá, et aperíret nobis Scriptúras ? 5. Num custos fratris mei ego sum ? 6. Respondit Pilátus, Numquid ego Judaéus sum ? 7. Numquid potest caecus caecum dúcere ? Nonne ambo in fóveam cadunt ? 8. Numquid et vos vultis discípuli ejus fieri ? 9. Nonne hic est quem quaerunt interficere ? 10. Multi dicent mihi in illâ die, Dómine, Dómine, nonne in nómine tuo prophetávimus, et in nómine tuo daemónia ejécimus, et in nómine tuo virtútes multas fécimus ?

\* In Classical Latin the particle **-ne** is attached to the first word in the sentence—*e.g.*, **audivístine ? did you hear ?**

## EXERCISE XCII.

## VOCABULARY.

verē, indeed, truly.  
 castēllum, a town.  
 itaque, so, therefore.  
 addūco (3), to bring.  
 sedūco (3), to seduce.  
 sic, so, thus.  
 nocte, by night.  
 unusquisque, each.  
 aliquis, anyone, someone.

semen, sēminis (*n.*), seed.  
 dissēnsio, dissēnsiōnis (*f.*), dissension.  
 apprehēdo (3), to take, lay hold of.  
 pontifex, pontificis (*m.*), chief priest.  
 princeps, principis (*m.*), a ruler.  
 maledictus, accursed.  
 scrutor (1), to search.  
 revētor (3) (*perf.* revērsus sum), to go back.  
 pergo (3) (*perf.* perrēxi), to go, proceed.

Ex illâ turbâ, cum audissent hos sermōnes ejus, dicēbant, Hic est verē prophēta. Alii dicēbant, Hic est Christus. Quidam autem dicēbant, Numquid a Galilaēâ venit Christus? Nonne Scriptūra dicit, Quia ex sēmine David, et de Bēthlehem castēllo, ubi erat David, venit Christus? Dissēnsio itaque facta est in turbâ propter eum. Quidam autem ex ipsis volēbant apprehēdere eum; sed nemo misit super eum manus. Venērunt ergo ministri ad pontifices et pharisaēos. Et dixerunt eis illi, Quare non adduxistis illum? Respondērunt ministri, Nunquam sic locutus est homo, sicut hic homo? Respondērunt ergo eis pharisaēi, Numquid et vos sedūcti estis? Numquid ex principibus aliquis crēdidit in eum, aut ex pharisaēis? Sed turba haec, quae non novit legem, maledicti sunt. Dixit Nicodēmus ad eos, ille qui venit ad eum nocte, qui unus erat ex ipsis, Numquid lex nostra júdicat hómīnem, nisi prius audierit ab ipso, et cognóverit quid fáciat? Respondērunt, et dixerunt ei, Numquid et tu Galilaéus es? Scrutāre Scriptúras, et vide quia a Galilaēâ prophēta non surgit. Et revēsi sunt unusquisque in domum suam. Jesus autem perrēxit ad montem Olivēti.—*St John vii, 40.*

## SECTION LVI.

## Time.

In Classical Latin the Accusative Case is used (without a preposition) to express "time how long"—*e.g.* :

*Manebámus tres horas, we remained three hours ;*

and the Ablative Case to express "time when" and "time within which"—*e.g.* :

*Profēctus est tertiâ horâ, he set out at the third hour ; redibo tribus diēbus, I shall return within three days.*

In Ecclesiastical Latin the above rules may be observed; but the Ablative Case is often used where Classical Latin would require the Accusative, and prepositions are frequently employed.

## EXERCISE XCIII.

## VOCABULARY.

tértius, third.  
quintus, fifth.  
cómmodo (1), to lend.  
quid ? why ?  
sex, six.

vigília, a watch.  
regrédior (*perf.* regréssus sum), to return.  
otíósus, idle.  
excíto (1), to raise up.  
tantus, so great, so much.

1. Et resurrexit tértiâ die secúndum Scriptúras, et ascéndit in coelum. 2. Quintâ autem vigiliâ noctis venit ad eos, ámbulans supra mare. 3. Jesus autem plenus Spíritu Sancto regréssus est a Jordáne, et agebátur a Spíritu in desértum diébus quadragínta, et tentabátur a diabólo. 4. Quis vestrum habébit amícum, et ibit ad illum médiâ nocte, et dicet illi, Ámice, cómmoda mihi tres panes ? 5. Et mansit ibi duos dies. 6. Quid hic statis totâ die otíósi ? 7. Et erat tribus diébus non videns. 8. Erit Fílius hóminis in corde terræ tribus diébus et tribus nóctibus. 9. Quadragínta et sex annis aedificátum est templum, et tu tribus diébus excitábis illud ? Dicit Philíppo Jesus, Tanto témpore vobíscum sum, et non cognovístis me ?

## SECTION LVII.

## The Gerund.

The Gerund is a verbal noun answering to the English verbal in *-ing*. It may be formed by removing the *-bam* of the Imperfect Indicative, and adding *-ndum*—*e.g.*: *amábam, amándum*. The Gerund is declined like *regnum*, but has no plural. In Ecclesiastical Latin the Gerund may be followed by a direct object—*e.g.*:

*Habes potestátem eficiéndi daemónia, you have the power of casting out evil spirits.*

The Accusative of the Gerund, with the preposition *ad*, is used to express Purpose—*e.g.*:

*Misit discipulos ad praedicándum, he sent the disciples to preach.*

## EXERCISE XCIV.

## VOCABULARY.

stupor, stupóris (*m.*), astonishment.

factum est, it came to pass.

lectus, a bed, couch.

tectum, a roof.

cógito (1), to think.

an, or.

jáceo (2), to lie.

tulit, he took up (*perf. of fero*).

gaúdium, joy.

sano (1), to heal.

inférre, to bring in.

tégula, a tile.

summitto (3), to let down.

remitto (3), to forgive.

cogitatio, cogitatio<sup>n</sup>is (*f.*), a thought.coram (*with Abl.*), before, in the presence of.

1. Et dedit illis potestatem curandi infirmitates, et ejiendi daemónia. 2. Confestim ergo misi ad te: et tu bene fecisti veniendo. 3. Qui habet aures audiendi, audiat. 4. Deus autem spei repleat vos omni gaudio et pace in credendo. 5. Et factum est in unâ diorum, et ipse sedebat docens. Et erant Pharisæi sedentes, et legis doctores, qui venerant ex omni castello Galilæae, et Judæae, et Jerúsalem: et virtus Domini erat ad sanandum eos. Et ecce viri portantes in lecto hominem, qui erat paralyticus: et quaerabant eum inferre, et ponere ante eum. Et non inveniētes quâ parte illum inferrent prae turbâ, ascenderunt supra tectum, et per tégulas summiserunt eum cum lecto in médium ante Jesum. Quorum fidem ut vidit, dixit: Homo, remittuntur tibi peccata tua. Et coeperunt cogitare Scribae, et Pharisæi, dicentes, Quis est hic qui loquitur blasphemias? Quis potest dimittere peccata, nisi solus Deus? Ut cognovit autem Jesus cogitationes eorum, respondens, dixit ad illos, Quid cogitatis in cordibus vestris? Quid est facilius dicere, Dimittuntur tibi peccata: an dicere, Surge, et ambula? Ut autem sciatis quia Filius hominis habet potestatem in terrâ dimittendi peccata, (ait paralytico) Tibi dico, surge, tolle lectum, et vade in domum tuam. Et confestim consurgens coram illis tulit lectum, in quo jacēbat: et abiit in domum suam, magnificans Deum. Et stupor apprehendit omnes, et magnificabant Deum. Et replēti sunt timóre, dicentes, Quia vidimus mirabilia hodie.—*St Luke v, 17.*

## SECTION LVIII.

## The Gerundive.

The Gerundive is a verbal adjective. It is formed in the same way as the Gerund, but declines like an ordinary adjective: **amāndus, amānda, amāndum**, etc. Only transitive verbs have Gerundives.

The Gerundive is used in the same way as the Gerund, but agrees with the noun that accompanies it in number, gender, and case, the noun being put into the case required by the construction of the sentence—*e.g.* :

*Misit discipulos ad infirmos sanandos, he sent disciples to heal the sick.*

## EXERCISE XCV.

## VOCABULARY.

*visito* (1), to visit.

*jusjurandum*, an oath.

*testamentum*, a testament.

*præeo*, to go before.

*sciëntia*, knowledge.

*erigo* (3), (*perf. erexi*), to lift up.

*mémoror* (1), to remember, be mindful.

*juro* (1), to swear.

*dirigo* (3), (*perf. direxi*), to direct.

*viscera*, bowels, heart.

Et Zachariás replétus est Spíritu Sancto: et prophetávit, dicens, Benedictus Dóminus Deus Israëli, quia visitávit, et fecit redemptiónem plebis suae. Et eréxit cornu salutis nobis: in domo David púeri sui. Sicut locútus est per os sanctorum, qui a saéculo sunt, prophetarum ejus: Salutem ex inimicis nostris, et de manu ómnium, qui odérunt nos. Ad faciendam misericórdiam cum pátribus nostris: et memorári testaménti sui sancti. Jusjurandum, quod jurávit ad Ábraham patrem nostrum, datúrum se nobis: Ut sine timóre, de manu inimicorum nostrorum liberáti, serviámus illi. In sanctitate, et justitiâ coram ipso, ómnibus diébus nostris. Et tu, puer, prophéta Altíssimi vocáberis: praesbis enim ante faciém Dómini paráre vias ejus: Ad dandam sciëntiam salutis plebi ejus: in remissionem peccatorum eorum; per viscera misericórdiae Dei nostri: in quibus visitávit nos, oriens ex alto: Illumináre his, qui in ténebris, et in umbrâ mortis sedent: ad dirigéndo pedes nostros in viam pacis.—*St Luke* i, 67.

## SECTION LIX.

The Gerund and Gerundive (*Continued*).

The Gerund and Gerundive are used with the verb *to be* to express obligation; the Gerundive is used of transitive verbs, the Gerund of intransitive; in the latter case the subject is put in the Dative—*e.g.* :

*Hic liber legéndus est, this book must be read* (Gerundive).

*Tibi regrediéndum est, you must return* (Gerund).

## EXERCISE XCVL

## VOCABULARY.

**videor** (*pass. of video*), to seem.  
**furor** (1), to steal.  
**tamen**, nevertheless, yet.  
**iníitium**, beginning.  
**convérsor** (1), to dwell.  
**charus** (*adj.*), dear.

**quisquis**, whoever.  
**resisto** (3), to resist (*with Dative*).  
**praeípue**, especially.  
**tentátio, tentatiónis** (*f.*), temptation.  
**circa** (*with Acc.*), about, at.  
**diléctio, dilectiónis** (*f.*), love.

1. Conversántibus illis in Galilaéâ, dixit illis Jesus, Fílius hóminis tradéndus est in manus hóminum, et occídent eum, et tértiâ die resúrget. 2. Qui ergo álium doces, te ipsum non doces: qui praédicas non furándum, furáris. 3. Resisténdo passiónibus, invenítur pax vera cordis, non autem eis serviéndo. 4. Vigilándum est tamen, praecipue circa ínítium tentatiónis. 5. Vigiláte et oráte, ut non intrétis in tentatiónem. 6. In me debet amici diléctio stare, et propter me diligéndus est, quisquis tibi bonus visus est, et multum charus in hac vitâ. 7. Nemo est bonus, nisi solus Deus, qui est super ómnia laudándus et in ómnibus benedicéndus. 8. Vigilándum est et orándum, ne tempus otiosé tránsat.

## SECTION LX.

## The Supine.

The **Supine** is an indeclinable verbal noun, seldom used in Latin constructions, but important as forming one of the principal parts of a Latin verb. The Supine ends in **-um**, and from it the past participle passive is directly formed—*e.g.*, the supine of **amo** is **amátum**, the past participle **amátus**. The four principal parts of the verb are: the 1st person singular of the present indicative (**amo**), the present infinitive (**amáre**), the 1st person singular of the perfect indicative (**amávi**), and the supine (**amátum**). If these four parts of the verb are known, all the tenses of an irregular verb can then be formed.\*

The Supine is occasionally used to express purpose (in Classical Latin only after a verb of motion)—*e.g.*:

**Misit hómines respónsum datum**, he sent men to give an answer.

\* For the principal parts of irregular verbs see page 106.

## EXERCISE XCVII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>gládus</b> (2), a sword.	<b>séparo</b> (1), to separate, set at variance.
<b>nurus</b> (4), a daughter-in-law.	<b>domésticus</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ), belonging to a household.
<b>socrus</b> (4), a mother-in-law.	<b>frigidus</b> ( <i>adj.</i> ), cold.
<b>tantum</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ), only.	<b>dignus</b> , worthy ( <i>followed by Abl.</i> ).
<b>merces</b> , <b>mercédis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), reward.	<b>potum</b> ( <i>supine of poto</i> ), to drink.

Nolíte arbitrári quia pacem vénerim mittere in terram : non veni pacem mittere, sed gládium. Veni enim separáre hóminem advérsus patrem suum, et filiam advérsus matrem suam, et nurum advérsus socrum suam. Et inimíci hóminis, doméstici ejus. Qui amat patrem aut matrem plus quam me, non est me dignus : et qui amat fílium aut fíliam super me, non est me dignus. Et qui non áccipit crucem suam et séquitur me, non est me dignus. Qui invenit ánimam suam, perdet illam : et qui perdidit ánimam suam propter me, invéniet eam. Qui récipit vos, me récipit : et qui me récipit, récipit eum qui me misit. Qui récipit prophétam in nómine prophétæ, mercédem prophétæ accípiet : et qui récipit justum in nómine justí, mercédem justí accípiet. Et quicúnque potum déderit uni ex mínimis istis cálicem aquæ frígidae tantum in nómine discipuli : amen dico vobis, non perdet mercédem suam. —*St Matthew x, 34.*

## EXERCISE XCVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>festus</b> , festive.	<b>consuetúdo</b> , <b>consuetúdinis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), a custom.
<b>existimo</b> (1), to think.	<b>consummo</b> (1), to fulfil, consummate.
<b>comitátus</b> (4), company.	<b>iter</b> , <b>itineris</b> ( <i>n.</i> ), journey.
<b>requiro</b> (3), to seek.	<b>noti</b> ( <i>pl.</i> ), acquaintances.
<b>cognátus</b> , a kinsman.	<b>trídnum</b> , three days.
<b>admíror</b> (1), to wonder.	<b>opórtet</b> ( <i>impersonal</i> ), it behoves.
<b>dóleo</b> (2), to sorrow, grieve.	<b>súbdítus</b> , subject.
<b>stúpeo</b> (2), to be astonished.	<b>ætas</b> , <b>ætátis</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), age.

Cum factus esset Jesus annórum duódecim, ascendéntibus illis Jerúsalem secúndum consuetúdinem diéi festi, consummatísque diébus, cum redírent, remánsit puer Jesus in Jerúsalem, et non cognovérunt paréntes ejus. Existimántes autem illum esse in comitátu, venérunt iter diéi, et requirébant eum inter cognátos et notos. Et non inveníentes, regréssi sunt in Jerúsalem, requiréntes eum. Et factum est, post trídnum invenérunt illum in templo, sedéntem in médio doctórum, audiéntem illos et interrogántem eos. Stupébant autem omnes, qui eum audiébant,

super prudentiâ et responsis ejus. Et videntes admirati sunt. Et dixit Mater ejus ad illum, Fili, quid fecisti nobis sic? Ecce, pater tuus et ego dolentes quaerebamus te. Et ait ad illos, Quid est, quod me quaerebatis? Nesciebatis, quia in his, quae Patris mei sunt, oportet me esse? Et ipsi non intellexerunt verbum, quod locutus est ad eos. Et descendit cum eis, et venit Nazareth: et erat subditus illis. Et Mater ejus conservabat omnia verba haec in corde suo. Et Jesus proficiebat scientiâ, et aetate, et gratiâ apud Deum et homines.—*St Luke ii, 42.*

## EXERCISE XCIX.

## VOCABULARY.

**primus** (*adj.*), first.  
**secundus** (*adj.*), second.  
**scabellum**, a footstool.  
**donec**, until.

**mandatum**, a commandment.  
**similis** (*3rd Decl. adj.*), like.  
**congrego** (1), to gather together.  
**quisquam**, anyone.

Accesserunt ad Jesum Pharisaei: et interrogavit eum unus ex eis legis doctor, tentans eum: Magister, quod est mandatum magnum in lege? Ait illi Jesus, Diliges Dominum Deum tuum ex toto corde tuo, et in totâ animâ tuâ, et in totâ mente tuâ. Hoc est maximum et primum mandatum. Secundum autem simile est huic: Diliges proximum tuum sicut teipsum. In his duobus mandatis universa lex pendet, et prophetae. Congregatis autem Pharisaeis, interrogavit eos Jesus, dicens, Quid vobis videtur de Christo? cujus filius est? Dicunt ei, David. Ait illis, Quomodo ergo David in spiritu vocat eum Dominum, dicens, Dixit Dominus Domino meo, Sede a dextris meis, donec ponam inimicos tuos scabellum pedum tuorum? Si ergo David vocat eum Dominum, quomodo filius ejus est? Et nemo poterat ei respondere verbum: neque ausus fuit quisquam ex illâ die eum amplius interrogare.—*St Matthew xxii, 35.*

## EXERCISE C.

## VOCABULARY.

**sero** (*adv.*), late.  
**metus** (4), fear.  
**retineo** (2), to retain.  
**clavus** (2), a nail.  
**octo**, eight.  
**deinde**, then.

**fores, forum** (*plur.*) (*f.*), doors.  
**insufflo** (1), to breathe upon.  
**fixura**, a print.  
**digitus** (2), a finger.  
**intus** (*adv.*), within.  
**affero**, to bring nigh.

Cum sero esset die illo, unâ sabbatorum, et fores essent clausae, ubi erant discipuli congregati, propter metum Judaeorum, venit

Jesus, et stetit in médio, et dixit eis, Pax vobis. Et cum hoc dixisset, osténdit eis manus et latus. Gavísi sunt ergo discípuli, viso Dómino. Dixit ergo eis íterum, Pax vobis. Sicut misit me Pater, et ego mitto vos. Haec cum dixisset, insufflávit, et dixit eis, Accípite Spíritum Sanctum: quorum remiséritis peccáta, remittúntur eis; et quorum retinuéritis, rétenta sunt. Thomas autem unus ex duódecim, qui dicitur Dídymus, non erat cum eis, quando venit Jesus. Dixérunt ergo ei álii discípuli, Vídimus Dóminum. Ille autem dixit eis, Nisi vídero in mánibus ejus fixúram clavórum, et mittam dígitum meum in locum clavórum, et mittam manum meam in latus ejus, non credam. Et post dies octo, íterum erant discípuli ejus intus, et Thomas cum eis. Venit Jesus, jánuis clausis, et stetit in médio, et dixit, Pax vobis. Deínde dicit Thomae, Infer dígitum tuum huc, et vide manus meas, et affer manum tuam, et mitte in latus meum: et noli esse incrédulus, sed fidélis. Respóndit Thomas, et dixit ei, Dóminus meus, et Deus meus. Dixit ei Jesus, Quia vidísti me, Thoma, credidísti: beati, qui non víderunt, et credidérunt.—*St John xxi, 19.*

# SUMMARY OF ACCIDENCE DECLENSIONS. I.—NOUNS.

FIRST.		SECOND.		THIRD.		
rōsa, rose (fem.).	dōminus, lord (mas.).	magister, master (mas.).	regnum, kingdom (neut.).	rex, king (mas.).	mons, mountain (mas.).	hostis, enemy (mas.).
rōsa rosae rosam rosae rosae rosā	dōminus domine dominum domini dominō dominō	magister magister magistrum magistri magistrō magistrō	regnum regnum regnum regni regnō regnō	rex rex rēgem regis rēgi rēge	mons mons montem montis monti monte	hostis hostis hostem hostis hosti hoste
rosae rosae rosās rosās rosās rosis	domini domini dominōs dominōrum dominis dominīs	magistri magistri magistrōs magistrōrum magistris magistris	regnā regna regna regnōrum regnis regnis	rēgēs rēgēs rēgēs rēgēs rēgum rēgibus rēgibus	montēs montēs montēs montēs montium* montibus montibus	hostēs hostēs hostēs hostēs hostium* hostibus hostibus

THIRD (continued).			FOURTH.		FIFTH.
ōpus, work (neut.).	nōmen, name (neut.).	grādus, step (mas.).	gēnu, knee (neut.).	diēs, day (mas. and fem.).	
ōpus opus opus operis operi opere	nōmen nōmen nōmen nōmen nōmini nōmine	grādus gradus gradum gradus gradul gradū	gēnu genu genu genū genū genū	diēs diēs diēs diei diei diē	
operā opera opera operum operibus operibus	nōminā nomina nōmina nōminum nōminibus nōminibus	gradūs gradūs gradūs graduum gradibus gradibus	gēnu gēnu gēnu gēnum genibus genibus	diēs diēs diēs diērum diēbus diēbus	

\* Two classes of 3rd declension nouns have -ium in the Gen. Plur.—viz.:

- (1) Parisyllabic—i.e., those whose stem does not increase in the gen. sing., as *hostis*, *hostis*; *nubes*, *nubis*, etc.
- (2) Those with monosyllabic stems ending in two consonants—*ē.g.*, *mons*, stem *mont-*; *nox*, stem *noct-*, etc.

## II.—ADJECTIVES.

## 2nd Declension.

	<i>bōnus, good.</i>					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	bōnus	bonā	bonum	boni	bonae	bonā
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Gen.	boni	bonae	boni	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonis	bonis	bonis
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonis	bonis	bonis

	<i>Pulcher, fair.</i>					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	pulcher	pulchrā	pulchrum	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchrā
Voc.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Gen.	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchri	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchris	pulchris	pulchris

	<i>miser, wretched.</i>					
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	miser	miserā	miserum	miseri	miserae	miserā
Voc.	miser	miserā	miserum	miseri	miserae	miserā
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	miserā
Gen.	miseri	miserae	miseri	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miseris	miseris	miseris
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miseris	miseris	miseris

## 3rd Declension.

	<i>Tristis, sad.</i>				<i>dives, rich.*</i>	
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>
Nom.	tristis	tristē	tristēs	tristia	dives	divitēs
Voc.	tristis	triste	tristēs	tristia	dives	divitēs
Acc.	tristem	triste	tristēs	tristia	divitem	divitēs
Gen.		tristia		tristium	divitis	divitum
Dat.		tristi		tristibus	diviti	divitibus
Abl.		tristi		tristibus	divite	divitibus

\* dives is not found in the neuter.

	<i>tristior, sadder.</i>				<i>felix, happy.</i>			
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	fēlix	fēlix	fēlicēs	fēlicīā
Voc.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	felix	felix	felicēs	felicia
Acc.	tristior	tristius	tristiorēs	tristiorā	fellicem	felix	felicēs	felicia
Gen.		tristoris		tristorum		felicis		felicitum
Dat.		tristori		tristoribus		felici		felicibus
Abl.		tristiore		tristoribus		felici		felicibus

	<i>prūdens, prudent.</i>			
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	prūdens	prūdens	prūdētēs	prūdētīā
Voc.	prūdens	prūdens	prūdētēs	prūdētīā
Acc.	prudentem	prūdens	prūdētēs	prūdētīā
Gen.		prudentis		prudentium
Dat.		prudenti		prudentibus
Abl.		prudenti		prudentibus

	<i>unus, one.</i>			<i>duo, two.</i>			<i>trēs, three.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc., Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	unus	una	unum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	triā
Voc.	une	una	unum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Acc.	unum	unam	unum	duos, duo	duas	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	unius	unius	unius	duorum	duarum	duorum		trium
Dat.	uni	uni	uni	duobus	duabus	duobus		tribus
Abl.	unō	unā	unō	duobus	duabus	duobus		tribus

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are compared in three degrees:

(1) Positive:	<i>dūrus, hard.</i>	<i>tristis, sad.</i>
(2) Comparative:	<i>dūrior, harder.</i>	<i>tristior, sadder.</i>
(3) Superlative:	<i>durissimus, hardest.</i>	<i>tristissimus, saddest.</i>

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by adding the suffix **-ior** to the last consonant of the Stem; the Superlative generally by adding **-issimus** to the last consonant of the Stem.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>durus</i>	<i>dur-ior</i>	<i>dur-issimus</i>
<i>tristis</i>	<i>trist-ior</i>	<i>trist-issimus</i>
<i>audax</i>	<i>audac-ior</i>	<i>audac-issimus</i>

Adjectives ending in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative Singular Masculine.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	<i>pulchrior</i>	<i>pulcherrimus</i>
<i>miser, wretched</i>	<i>miserior</i>	<i>miserissimus</i>
<i>acer, keen</i>	<i>acrior</i>	<i>acerrimus</i>
<i>celer, swift</i>	<i>celerior</i>	<i>celerrimus</i>

Six adjectives ending in **-ilis** form the Superlative by doubling the last consonant of the Stem and adding **-imus** :

<i>facilis, easy.</i>	<i>similis, like.</i>	<i>gracilis, slender.</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult.</i>	<i>dissimilis, unlike.</i>	<i>humilis, lowly.</i>

<i>E.g.: facilis</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>difficillior</i>	<i>difficillimus, etc.</i>

## Irregular Comparison.

Some Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from Stems distinct from that of the Positive:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>bonus, good.</i>	<i>mellior</i>	<i>optimus</i>
<i>malus, bad.</i>	<i>pējor</i>	<i>peccimus</i>
<i>parvus, small.</i>	<i>minor</i>	<i>minimus</i>
<i>multus, much.</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plurimus</i>
<i>magnus, great.</i>	<i>mājor</i>	<i>maximus</i>
<i>senex, old.</i>	{ <i>natu major</i> }	<i>natu maximus</i>
	{ <i>senior</i> }	
<i>juvenis, young.</i>	{ <i>natu minor</i> }	<i>natu minimus</i>
	{ <i>junior</i> }	
<i>dives, rich.</i>	{ <i>ditior</i> }	<i>ditissimus</i>
	{ <i>divitior</i> }	<i>divitissimus</i>
<i>vetus, old.</i>	<i>vetustior</i>	<i>veterrimus</i>

N.B.—Senior means *old rather than young*, and junior *young rather than old*. Plus is only found in the Neuter Singular.

Adjectives compounded with **-dīcus**, **-fīcus**, **-vōlus** (from **dīco**, **facio**, **volo**), form the Comparative and Superlative as if from participles in **-ens**.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>maledīcus</b> , <i>evil-speaking.</i>	<b>maledicentior</b>	<b>maledicentissimus</b>
<b>benefīcus</b> , <i>beneficent.</i>	<b>beneficentior</b>	<b>beneficentissimus</b>
<b>benevōlus</b> , <i>well-wishing.</i>	<b>benevolentior</b>	<b>benevolentissimus</b>

Also **providus**, *provident*, **providentior**, **providentissimus**.

Adjectives in **-eus**, **-ius**, **-uus** are generally compared by using the adverbs **magis**, *more*, **maxime**, *most*, with the Positive: **dubius**, *doubtful*, **magis dubius**, *more doubtful*, **maxime dubius**, *most doubtful*. **Pius**, *pious*, has superlative **piissimus**.

Some Comparatives and Superlatives have no Positive, but correspond to Adverbs from the same Stem.

Adverb.	Comparative Adjective.	Superlative Adjective.
<b>extrā</b> , <i>outside.</i>	<b>extērior</b>	<b>extrēmus</b> , <b>extīmus</b>
<b>intrā</b> , <i>within.</i>	<b>intērior</b>	<b>intīmus</b>
<b>suprā</b> , <i>above.</i>	<b>supērior</b>	<b>suprēmus</b> , <b>summus</b>
<b>infrā</b> , <i>below.</i>	<b>infērior</b>	<b>infirmus</b> , <b>imus</b>
<b>citrā</b> , <i>on this side.</i>	<b>citērior</b>	<b>citīmus</b>
<b>ultrā</b> , <i>beyond.</i>	<b>ultērior</b>	<b>ultīmus</b>
<b>prae</b> , <i>before.</i>	<b>prior</b>	<b>primus</b> , <i>first.</i>
<b>post</b> , <i>after.</i>	<b>postērior</b>	<b>postrēmus</b> , <i>last.</i>
<b>prōpē</b> , <i>near.</i>	<b>propior</b>	<b>proximus</b>

### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs derived from adjectives and ending in **-ē**, **-ō**, **-ter**, form Comparative in **-ius**, Superlative in **-issimē**.

Adjective.	Adverb.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>dignus</b> , <i>worthy.</i>	<b>dignē</b>	<b>dignius</b>	<b>dignissimē</b>
<b>tūtus</b> , <i>safe.</i>	<b>tūtō</b>	<b>tūtius</b>	<b>tūtissimē</b>
<b>fortis</b> , <i>brave.</i>	<b>fortiter</b>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
<b>prudens</b> , <i>prudent.</i>	<b>prudenter</b>	<b>prudētius</b>	<b>prudētissimē</b>

Irregular Comparison has corresponding forms in Adverbs.

Adverb.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>benē</b> , <i>well.</i>	<b>melius</b>	<b>optimē</b>
<b>malē</b> , <i>ill.</i>	<b>pējus</b>	<b>peccimē</b>
<b>paullum</b> , <i>little.</i>	<b>minus</b>	<b>minimē</b>
<b>multum</b> , <i>much.</i>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrium</b>
<b>magnōpēre</b> , <i>greatly.</i>	<b>magis</b>	<b>maximē</b>
<b>dīū</b> , <i>long.</i>	<b>dīutius</b>	<b>dīutissimē</b>
<b>intus</b> , <i>within.</i>	<b>intērius</b>	<b>intimē</b>

N.B.—**Magis** means *more* in degree; **plus**, *more* in quantity.

### III.—PRONOUNS.

	1st Person I			2nd Person You			3rd Person Himself			This			Who			Who?
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Singular.</i>	Nom.	ēgō	tū	[ipse]	hic	haec	hōc	qui	quae	quōd	quis?	<i>masc. nom. quid?</i> <i>neut. nom. and acc. other cases like qui</i>				
	Acc.	mē	tē	sē	hunc	hanc	hōc	quem	quam	quōd						
	Gen.	mēi	tui	sui	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus						
	Dat.	mihī	tibi	sibi	huic	huic	huic	cui	cui	cui						
<i>Plural.</i>	Nom.	nōs	vōs	[ipsi]	hi	hae	haec	qui	quae	quae						
	Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē	hōs	hās	haec	quōs	quās	quae						
	Gen.	nostrum (-trī)	vestrum (-trī)	sui	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	quōrum	quārum	quōrum						
	Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi	his	his	his	quibus (or quis) (all genders)								
<i>Abl.</i>		nōbīs	vōbīs	sē	his	his	his	quibus (or quis) (, , )								

	3rd Person			The Same			That				
	He	She	It	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
<i>Singular.</i>	Nom.	is	ēa	id	idem	eadem	idem	illō	illā	illūd	<i>iste, that or this, and ipse, self, decline like ille (But ipse has neut. sing. ipsum)</i>
	Acc.	eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem	illum	illam	illūd	
	Gen.	ejus	ejus	ejus	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem	illius	illius	illius	
	Dat.	ei	ei	ei	eidem	eidem	eidem	illi	illi	illi	
<i>Abl.</i>		ēō	ēa	ēō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	illō	illā	illō	
		ēi	ēae (Regular)	ēa	eidem	eaedem (Regular)	eadem	illi	illae (Regular)	illā	
N.B.—											
										ei, eis are sometimes written il, ils	

The following have Genitive singular, all genders, in *-ius*, Dative in *-i*. Alter (*alterius*), one of two; uter (*utrius*), which of two; neuter (*neutrius*), neither; unus, one; ullus, any; nullus, none; solus, only; totus, whole; alius, other. The neuter sing. of alius is aliud.

NUMERALS.

ARABIC NUMERALS.	ROMAN NUMERALS.	CARDINALS, answering the question Quot ? <i>how many ?</i>	ORDINALS, answering the question Quotus ? <i>which in order of number ?</i>	DISTRIBUTIVES, answering the question Quotēni ? <i>how many each ?</i>	NUMERAL ADVERBS, answering the question Quoties ? <i>how many times ?</i>
1	I	ūnus	m. -ūs, f. -ā, n. -um. prīmus (prior), <i>first</i>	m. -ī, f. -ae, n. -ā. singūli, <i>one each</i>	semel, <i>once</i>
2	II	duo	secundus (alter), <i>second</i>	bīni, <i>two each</i>	bis, <i>twice</i>
3	III	trēs	tertius, <i>third, etc.</i>	ternī, or trīni, <i>three each, etc.</i>	ter, <i>three times, etc.</i>
4	IIII or IV	quattuor	quartus	quaternī	quater
5	V	quinque	quintus	quīni	quinquies
6	VI	sex	sextus	sēni	sexies
7	VII	septem	septīmus	septēni	septies
8	VIII or IIX	octo	octāvus	octōni	ooties
9	VIII or IX	nōvem	nōnus	novēni	novies
10	X	dēcem	decīmus	dēni	decies
11	XI	undēcim	undecīmus	undēni	undecies
12	XII	duodecim	duodecīmus	duodēni	duodecies
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decīmus	terni dēni	tredecies
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decīmus	quaterni dēni	quattuordecies
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decīmus	quīni dēni	quindecies
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decīmus	sēni dēni	sēdecies
17	XVII	septemdecim	septīmus decīmus	septēni dēni	septiesdecies
18	XVIII or XIIIX	{ duōdēvigintī } { octodecim }	duodēvicesīmus	duodēvicēni	duodēvīcies
19	XVIII or XIX	{ undēvigintī } { novendecim }	undēvicesīmus	undēvicēni	undēvīcies

NUMERALS—Continued.

ARABIC NUMERALS.	ROMAN NUMERALS.	CARDINALS, answering the question Quotus? how many?	ORDINALS, answering the question Quotus? which in order of number?	DISTRIBUTIVES, answering the question Quotēni? how many each?	NUMERAL ADVERBS, answering the question Quotiens? how many times?
20	XX	vīginti	vicesimus	vicēni	vicies
21	XXI	unus et vīginti	unus et vicesimus	vicēni singuli	semel et vicies
22	XXII	duo et vīginti	alter et vicesimus	vicēni binī	bis et vicies
30	XXX	trīginta	trīgessimus	tricēni	tricies
40	XXXX or XL	quādrāgintā	quādrāgesimus	quādrāgēni	quādragies
50	L	quīnquāginta	quīnquāgesimus	quīnquāgēni	quīnquāgies
60	LX	sexāginta	sexāgesimus	sexāgēni	sexāgies
70	LXX	septuāginta	septuāgesimus	septuāgēni	septuāgies
80	LXXX or XXC	octōginta	octōgesimus	octōgēni	octōgies
90	LXXXX or XC	nōnāginta	nōnāgesimus	nōnāgēni	nōnāgies
100	C	centum	centesimus	centēni	centies
101	CI	centum et unus	centesimus primus	centēni singuli	centies semel
200	CC	ducenti, ae, a	ducesimus	ducēni	ducenties
300	CCC	trecenti, ae, a	trecentesimus	trecentēni	trecenties
400	CCCC	quadrīngenti	quadrīngentesimus	quadrīngēni	quadrīngenties
500	Ic or D	quīngenti	quīngentesimus	quīngēni	quīngenties
600	Icc	sexcenti	sexcentesimus	sexcentēni	sexcenties
700	Iccc	septīngenti	septīngentesimus	septīngēni	septīngenties
800	Icccc	octīngenti	octīngentesimus	octīngēni	octīngenties
900	Iccccc	nongenti	nongentesimus	nongēni	nongenties
1,000	cIo or M	millē	millesimus	singula milia	milies
2,000	cIocIo or MM	duo milia	bis-millesimus	bina milia	bis milies

# REGULAR VERBS.

## ACTIVE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE SIMPLR.	PERFECT AND AORIST.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
<i>First Conjugation.</i>	<i>I love, am loving, do love.</i>	<i>I was loving.</i>	<i>I shall love.</i>	<i>I have loved. I loved.</i>	<i>I had loved.</i>	<i>I shall have loved.</i>
Sing. 1.	Āmō	āmā-bam	āmā-bō	āmāv-i	āmāv-eram	āmāv-erō
2.	āmā-s	āmā-bās	āmā-bis	āmāv-isti	āmāv-erās	āmāv-eris
3.	āmā-t	āmā-bāt	āmā-bit	āmāv-it	āmāv-erāt	āmāv-erit
Plur. 1.	āmā-mūs	āmā-bāmūs	āmā-bimūs	āmāv-imūs	āmāv-eramūs	āmāv-erimūs
2.	āmā-tis	āmā-bātis	āmā-bitis	āmāv-istis	āmāv-erātis	āmāv-eritis
3.	āmā-nt	āmā-bānt	āmā-būnt	āmāv-erūt or -ērē	āmāv-erānt	āmāv-erint
<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	<i>I advise, am advising, do advise.</i>	<i>I was advising.</i>	<i>I shall advise.</i>	<i>I have advised. I advised.</i>	<i>I had advised.</i>	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
Sing. 1.	Mōnē-o	mōnē-bam	mōnē-bō	mōnū-i	mōnū-eram	mōnū-erō
2.	mōnē-s	mōnē-bās	mōnē-bis	mōnū-isti	mōnū-erās	mōnū-eris
3.	mōnē-t	mōnē-bāt	mōnē-bit	mōnū-it	mōnū-erāt	mōnū-erit
Plur. 1.	mōnē-mūs	mōnē-bāmūs	mōnē-bimūs	mōnū-imūs	mōnū-eramūs	mōnū-erimūs
2.	mōnē-tis	mōnē-bātis	mōnē-bitis	mōnū-istis	mōnū-erātis	mōnū-eritis
3.	mōnē-nt	mōnē-bānt	mōnē-būnt	mōnū-erūt or -erē	mōnū-erānt	mōnū-erint
<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	<i>I rule, am ruling, do rule.</i>	<i>I was ruling.</i>	<i>I shall rule.</i>	<i>I have ruled. I ruled.</i>	<i>I had ruled.</i>	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>
Sing. 1.	Rēg-ō	rēg-ebam	rēg-am	rēx-i	rēx-eram	rēx-erō
2.	rēg-is	rēg-ebās	rēg-ēs	rēx-isti	rēx-erās	rēx-eris
3.	rēg-it	rēg-ebāt	rēg-ēt	rēx-it	rēx-erāt	rēx-erit
Plur. 1.	rēg-imūs	rēg-ebāmūs	rēg-ēmūs	rēx-imūs	rēx-eramūs	rēx-erimūs
2.	rēg-itis	rēg-ebātis	rēg-ētis	rēx-istis	rēx-erātis	rēx-eritis
3.	rēg-unt	rēg-ebānt	rēg-ēnt	rēx-erūt or -erē	rēx-erānt	rēx-erint
<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>	<i>I hear, am hearing, do hear.</i>	<i>I was hearing.</i>	<i>I shall hear.</i>	<i>I have heard. I heard.</i>	<i>I had heard.</i>	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
Sing. 1.	Audī-ō	audī-ebam	audī-am	audīv-i	audīv-eram	audīv-erō
2.	audī-s	audī-ebās	audī-ēs	audīv-isti	audīv-erās	audīv-eris
3.	audī-t	audī-ebāt	audī-ēt	audīv-it	audīv-erāt	audīv-erit
Plur. 1.	audī-mūs	audī-ebāmūs	audī-ēmūs	audīv-imūs	audīv-eramūs	audīv-erimūs
2.	audī-tis	audī-ebātis	audī-ētis	audīv-istis	audīv-erātis	audīv-eritis
3.	audī-unt	audī-ebānt	audī-ēnt	audīv-erūt or -erē	audīv-erānt	audīv-erint

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
<i>First Conjugation.</i> { Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	amem amés amet amémus amétis ament	amarem amérés amaret amarémus amaretis amarent	amaverim amaveris amaverit amaverimus amaveritis amaverint	amavissem amavisés amavisset amavissemus amavissetis amavisissent
<i>Second Conjugation.</i> { Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	monéam monéas monéat monéamus monéatis monéant	monérem monérés moneret monerémus moneretis monerent	monéerim monéeris monéerit monéerimus monéeritis monéerint	monéissem monéisés monéisset monéissemus monéissetis monéisissent
<i>Third Conjugation.</i> { Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	régam régas regat régamus régatis régant	régérem régérés régeret régéremus régéretis régèrent	rexérim rexéris rexérit rexérimus rexéritis rexérint	rexissem rexisés rexisset rexissemus rexissetis rexissent
<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i> { Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	audiam audiás audiat audiámus audiátis audiant	audírem audírés audíret audírémus audírétis audírent	audíverim audíveris audíverit audíverimus audíveritis audíverint	audívissem audívisés audívisset audívissemus audívissetis audívisissent

## ACTIVE.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	<i>First Conjugation.</i>	<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>
	<i>Sing. amā, love Plur. amāte</i>	<i>mōnē, advise mōnēte</i>	<i>rēgē, rule rēgite</i>	<i>audi, hear audite</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>Present</b>	<i>to love amāre</i>	<i>to advise mōnere</i>	<i>to rule rēgere</i>	<i>to hear audire</i>
<b>Perfect</b>	<i>to have loved amāvise</i>	<i>to have advised mōnūisse</i>	<i>to have ruled rexisse</i>	<i>to have heard audivise</i>
<b>Future</b>	<i>to be about to love amātūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to advise mōnītūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to rule rectūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to hear auditūrus esse</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>Present</b>	<i>loving amans</i>	<i>advising mōnens</i>	<i>ruling rēgens</i>	<i>hearing audiens</i>
<b>Future</b>	<i>about to love amātūrus</i>	<i>about to advise mōnītūrus</i>	<i>about to rule rectūrus</i>	<i>about to hear auditūrus</i>

## GERUND.

	<i>loving amandum</i>	<i>advising mōnendum</i>	<i>ruling rēgendum</i>	<i>hearing audiendum</i>
--	---------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------------

## SUPINE.

	<i>to love amatum</i>	<i>to advise monitum</i>	<i>to rule rectum</i>	<i>to hear auditum</i>
--	---------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------

THE VERB **SUM**: I AM.

**INDICATIVE.**

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imper-</i> <i>fect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plu-</i> <i>perfect.</i>	<i>Future-</i> <i>Perfect.</i>
	<i>I am</i>	<i>I was</i>	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>I have been</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>
Sing. 1	sum	eram	ero	fui	fueram	fuero
2	es	eras	eris	fuisti	fueras	fuieris
3	est	erat	erit	fuit	fuerat	fuierit
Plur. 1	sumus	erāmus	erimus	fuius	fuērāmus	fuierimus
2	estis	erātis	eritis	fuius	fuērātis	fuieritis
3	sunt	erant	erunt	fuerunt	fuerant	fuerint

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
Sing. 1	sim	essem	fuerim	fuissem
2	sis	essēs	fueris	fuisseā
3	sit	esset	fuerit	fuisset
Plur. 1	simus	essēmus	fuerimus	fuissemus
2	sitis	essētis	fueritis	fuissetis
3	sint	essent	fuerint	fuisissent

**IMPERATIVE.**

es .. *be thou*  
este .. *be ye*

**INFINITIVE.**

Present .. esse .. .. *to be*  
Perfect .. fuisse .. .. *to have been*  
Future .. futūrus esse .. *to be about to be*

**PARTICIPLE.**

Future .. futūrus .. *about to be*

PASSIVE.  
INDICATIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.	PERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
	<i>I am loved, or being loved.</i>	<i>I was being loved.</i>	<i>I shall be loved.</i>	<i>I have been loved, or I was loved.</i>	<i>I had been loved.</i>	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
Sing. 1.	amor	amābar	amābor	amātus sum	amātus eram	amātus ero
2.	amāris	amābāris	amāberis	amātus es	amātus erās	amātus eris
3.	amātur	amābātur	amābitur	amātus est	amātus erāt	amātus erit
Plur. 1.	amāmur	amābāmur	amābimur	amāti sumus	amāti erāmus	amāti erimus
2.	amāmini	amābāmini	amābimini	amāti estis	amāti erātis	amāti eritis
3.	amantur	amabantur	amābuntur	amāti sunt	amāti erant	amāti erunt
	<i>I am advised, or being advised.</i>	<i>I was being advised.</i>	<i>I shall be advised.</i>	<i>I have been, I was, advised.</i>	<i>I had been advised.</i>	<i>I shall have been advised.</i>
Sing. 1.	moneor	monēbar	monēbor	monitus sum	monitus eram	monitus ero
2.	monēris	monēbāris	monēberis	monitus es	monitus erās	monitus eris
3.	monētur	monēbātur	monēbitur	monitus est	monitus erāt	monitus erit
Plur. 1.	monēmur	monēbāmur	monēbimur	moniti sumus	moniti erāmus	moniti erimus
2.	monēmini	monēbāmini	monēbimini	moniti estis	moniti erātis	moniti eritis
3.	monentur	monēbantur	monēbuntur	moniti sunt	moniti erant	moniti erunt
	<i>I am ruled, or being ruled.</i>	<i>I was being ruled.</i>	<i>I shall be ruled.</i>	<i>I have been, I was, ruled.</i>	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
Sing. 1.	regor	regēbar	regar	rectus sum	rectus eram	rectus ero
2.	regeris	regēbāris	regeris	rectus es	rectus erās	rectus eris
3.	regitur	regēbātur	regetur	rectus est	rectus erāt	rectus erit
Plur. 1.	regimur	regēbāmur	regemur	recti sumus	recti erāmus	recti erimus
2.	regimini	regēbāmini	regemini	recti estis	recti erātis	recti eritis
3.	reguntur	regēbantur	regentur	recti sunt	recti erant	recti erunt
	<i>I am heard, or being heard.</i>	<i>I was being heard.</i>	<i>I shall be heard.</i>	<i>I have been, I was, heard.</i>	<i>I had been heard.</i>	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
Sing. 1.	audior	audiēbar	audiar	audītus sum	audītus eram	audītus ero
2.	audiris	audiēbāris	audiēris	audītus es	audītus erās	audītus eris
3.	audītur	audiēbātur	audiētur	audītus est	audītus erāt	audītus erit
Plur. 1.	audīmur	audiēbāmur	audiēmur	audīti sumus	audīti erāmus	audīti erimus
2.	audīmini	audiēbāmini	audiēmini	audīti estis	audīti erātis	audīti eritis
3.	audiuntur	audiēbantur	audiēntur	audīti sunt	audīti erant	audīti erunt

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	amer amēris amētur amēmur amēmini amentur	amārer amārēris amārētur amārēmur amārēmini amārentur	amātus amatus amatus amati amati amati	sim sis sit simus sitis sint	amātus amatus amatus amati amati amati	essem essēs essēt essēmus essētis essent
Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	monear moneāris moneātur moneāmur moneāmini moneantur	monērer monērēris monērētur monērēmur monērēmini monērentur	monītus monitus monitus moniti moniti moniti	sim sis sit simus sitis sint	monītus monitus monitus moniti moniti moniti	essem essēs essēt essēmus essētis essent
Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	regar regāris regātur regāmur regāmini regantur	regērer regerēris regerētur regerēmur regerēmini regerentur	rectus rectus rectus recti recti recti	sim sis sit simus sitis sint	rectus rectus rectus recti recti recti	essem essēs essēt essēmus essētis essent
Sing. 1. 2. 3. Plur. 1. 2. 3.	audiar audiāris audiātur audiāmur audiāmini audiantur	audīrer audirēris audirētur audirēmur audirēmini audirentur	audītus auditus auditus auditi auditi auditi	sim sis sit simus sitis sint	audītus auditus auditus auditi auditi auditi	essem essēs essēt essēmus essētis essent

## PASSIVE.

<b>IMPERATIVE MOOD.</b>				
	<i>First Conjugation.</i>	<i>Second Conjugation.</i>	<i>Third Conjugation.</i>	<i>Fourth Conjugation.</i>
<b>Singular</b>	āmāre	mōnēre	rēgere	audīre
<b>Plural</b>	āmāmini	mōnēmini	rēgimini	audīmini

<b>INFINITIVE MOOD.</b>				
<b>Present</b>	<i>to be loved</i> āmārī	<i>to be advised</i> mōnērī	<i>to be ruled</i> rēgī	<i>to be heard</i> audīrī
<b>Perfect</b>	<i>to have been loved</i> āmātus esse	<i>to have been advised</i> mōnītus esse	<i>to have been ruled</i> rectus esse	<i>to have been heard</i> audītus esse
<b>Future</b>	<i>to be about to be loved</i> āmātum irī	<i>to be about to be advised</i> mōnītum irī	<i>to be about to be ruled</i> rectum irī	<i>to be about to be heard</i> audītum irī

<b>PARTICIPLE.</b>				
<b>Perfect</b>	<i>having been loved</i> āmātus	<i>having been advised</i> mōnītus	<i>having been ruled</i> rectus	<i>having been heard</i> audītus

<b>GERUNDIVE.</b>				
	<i>meet to be loved</i> amandus	<i>meet to be advised</i> monendus	<i>meet to be ruled</i> regendus	<i>meet to be heard</i> audiendus

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

	Possum.	Eo.	Fero.		Volo.	Nolo.	Malo.	Fio.	
			Active.	Passive.					
Indicative.	Present	<i>I am able.</i> pos-sum pôt-es pot-est pos-sumus pot-estis pos-sunt	<i>I go.</i> eo is it Imus Itis eunt	<i>I bear.</i> fêro fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt	<i>I am borne.</i> feror ferris fertur ferimur ferimini feruntur	<i>I wish.</i> vôlo vis vult volûmus vultis volunt	<i>I do not wish.</i> nôlo nonvis nonvult nolûmus nonvultis nolunt	<i>I prefer.</i> mâlo mavis mavult malûmus mavultis malunt	<i>I am made.</i> ffo fls fit (fimus) (fitis) fiunt
	Future Simple	pôt-êro* pot-eris	Ibo ibis	feram feres	ferar ferêris	vôlam volês	(nolam) noles	(malam) males	fiam fies
	Imperfect	pôt-êram pot-eras	Ibam ibas	ferêbam ferebas	ferêbar ferêbâris	volêbam volêbas	nolêbam nolêbas	malêbam malêbas	fiêbam fiêbas
	Perfect	pôt-ui pot-uisti	ii or ivi iisti	tûli tulisti	latus sum ,, es	volui voluisti	nolui noluisti	malui maluisti	factus sum factus es
Imperative	— —	S. I P. Ite	fer ferte	ferre ferimini	— —	S. nolli P. nolite	— —	(fi) (fite)	
Subjunctive.	Present	pos-sim pos-sis	eam eas	feram feras	ferar ferâris	vêlim velis	nôlim nolis	mâlim malis	fiam flas
	Imperfect	pos-sem pos-ses	Irem ireas	ferrem ferres	ferrer ferrêris	vellem velles	nollem nolles	mallem malles	fiêrem fiêres
	Perfect†	pôtui-êrim potu-eris	ierim ieris	tûlerim tuleris	latus sim ,, sis	voluerim volueris	noluerim nolueris	maluerim malueris	factus sim factus sis
Infra.	Present Perfect Future	pos-se potu-isse —	Ire Ivissæ (isse) Iturus esse	ferre tûlissæ laturus esse	ferri latus esse latum iri	velle volu-isse —	nolle noluisse —	malle maluisse —	fieri factus esse factum iri
	Present Perfect Future	— — —	Iens euntis — Iturus	fêrens — lâturus	— lâtus —	volens — —	nolens — —	— — —	— factus —
	Gerund Supine	— —	eundum itum	ferendum lâtum	— —	volendum —	nolendum —	malendum —	— faciendus

\* Like the Future of *sum*, 3rd plural *poterunt*.

† Future Perfect and Pluperfect formed regularly from Perfect Stem.

## PREPOSITIONS.

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING ACCUSATIVE CASE.

**Ad, to, into, near, according to, at, etc.:**

*e.g.*, *Ad urbem ivit, he went to the city.*

*Ad portam stant, they stand at (or near) the gate.*

**Adversus, against:**

*e.g.*, *Veni separare hominem adversus patrem suum, I came to set a man at variance against his father.*

**Ante, before:**

*e.g.*, *Ante ostium stant, they stand before the gate.*

*Ante tertiam horam, before the third hour.*

**Apud, at, among, with, at the house of, etc.:**

*e.g.*, *Apud eum, at his house.*

*Verbum erat apud Deum, the Word was with God.*

**Circa, about, around, at, concerning:**

*e.g.*, *circa initium, at the beginning.*

*circa me, around me.*

**Contra, against, over against:**

*e.g.*, *Qui non est mecum, contra me est, he that is not with me, is against me.*

**Erga, towards (of feelings):**

*e.g.*, *Benevolentia amicorum erga nos, the kindness of our friends towards us.*

**Inter, among, between, during, etc.:**

*e.g.*, *Inter nos, among us.*

*Inter coenam, during supper.*

**Juxta, near, according to, close beside:**

*e.g.*, *Stabat Mater juxta crucem, His Mother was standing beside the cross.*

**Ob, on account of:**

*e.g.*, *ob hoc scelus, on account of this crime.*

**Penes, in the hands of:**

*e.g.*, *Penes regem, in the hands of the king.*

**Praeter, besides, beyond, except:**

*e.g.*, *Omnes praeter te, all except you.*

*Praeter domum ivit, he went past the house.*

*Praeter spem, beyond hope.*

**Per, through, by means of, by (in oaths):**

*e.g.*, *Per multas noctes, through many nights.*

*Per hanc dexteram, by this right hand (I beseech you).*

**Propter, on account of, owing to, for:**

*e.g.*, *Gratias agimus tibi propter magnam gloriam tuam, we give thee thanks for thy great glory.*

**Post, after, behind:**

*e.g.*, *Post haec, after this.*

*Post me secutus est, he followed behind me.*

**Secundum, according to, after:**

*e.g.*, *Secundum verbum tuum, according to thy word.*

**Secus, along, beside:**

*e.g.*, *Secus mare, beside the sea.*

**Supra, above, on, upon, beyond:**

*e.g.*, *Ambulans supra mare, walking on the sea.*

*Benedictus supra omnes, blessed beyond all.*

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING ABLATIVE CASE.

**A, ab, abs, from, by :**

e.g., *Ab urbe venit, he came from the city.*  
*Laudátus ab ómnibus, praised by all.*

**Absque, without :**

e.g., *Absque foédere, without fidelity.*

**Coram, in the presence of, before :**

e.g., *Coram rege, in the presence of the king.*

**Clam, secretly, without the knowledge of :**

e.g., *Clam me, without my knowledge.*

**Cum, with, together with (enclitic with me, te, se, nobis, vobis) :**

e.g., *Venit cum discipulis, he came with the disciples.*

*Pax vobiscum, Peace be with you.*

**De, from, down from, concerning, about, of :**

e.g., *Descéndit de coelis, He came down from heaven.*

*De his rebus audívi, I have heard of these things.*

**E, ex, out of, according to :**

e.g., *Ex urbe ivit, he went out of the city.*

*Ex foédere, in accordance with the treaty.*

**Pro, for, on behalf of, instead of, before :**

e.g., *Ora pro nobis, pray for us.*

*Regnávít pro patre, he reigned instead of his father.*

*Pro castris, before the camp.*

**Prae, for, because of, compared with, before :**

e.g., *Prae dolore non pótuit loqui, he could not speak for grief.*

*Benedicta tu es prae ómnibus muliéribus, Blessed art thou before all women.*

## PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING BOTH ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

**In, (a) with Accusative, into, for, in, etc. :**

e.g., *In urbem venit, he came into the city.*

*In aetérnum, for ever.*

*In vicem, in turn.*

**(b) with Ablative, in, on, at, before, etc. :**

e.g., *In urbe est, he is in the city.*

*In tali témpore, at such a time.*

*In óculis ómnium est, he is before everyone's eyes.*

**Sub, (a) with Accusative, under (of motion under), about, towards, etc. :**

e.g., *Sub terram descéndit, he went down under the earth.*

*Sub noctem, about night, towards night.*

**(b) with Ablative, under (of rest under), at the foot of, beneath.**

e.g., *Sub terrâ hábitat, he lives underground.*

*Sub monte stetit, he stood at the foot of the mountain.*

**Super, (a) with Accusative, over, above, beyond, upon, etc. :**

e.g., *Non est discipulus super magistrum, the disciple is not above the master.*

*Super flúmina Babylónis illic sédimus et flévimus, beside the rivers of Babylon there we sat and wept.*

**(b) with Ablative, concerning, about.**

e.g., *Super hao re, concerning this matter.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS IN COMMON USE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
abeo	-īre	abii	abītum	go away
abscido	-ēre	abscīdi	abscisum	cut off
abscondo	-ēre	abscondi	absconditum	hide
absolvo	-ēre	absolvi	absolūtum	absolve
abstineo	-ēre	abstinui	abstentum	abstain
accēdo	-ēre	accessi	accessum	approach
accendo	-ēre	accendi	accensum	kindle
accido	-ēre	accīdi	—	happen
accingo	-ēre	accinxi	accinctum	gird
accipio	-ēre	accēpi	acceptum	receive
adeo	-īre	adii	aditum	go to
adjūvo	-āre	adjūvi	adjūtum	help
advēnio	-īre	advēni	adventum	come
affero	-re	attūli	allātum	bring to
ago	-ēre	ēgi	actum	do, act, drive
aperio	-ire	aperui	apertum	open
ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum	burn (intr.)
ascendo	-ēre	ascendi	ascensum	ascend
assumo	-ēre	assumpsi	assumptum	assume
audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	dare
aufero	-re	abstūli	ablātum	take away
avertō	-ēre	averti	aversum	turn away
benedīco	-ēre	benedixi	benedictum	bless
bibo	-ere	bibi	bibitum	drink
cādo	-ēre	cēcīdi	eāsum	fall
caedo	-ēre	cēcīdi	caesum	strike
cāno	-ēre	cēcīnī	cantum	sing
cāpio	-ēre	cēpi	captum	take
carpo	-ēre	carpsi	carptum	pluck
cāveo	-ēre	cāvi	cautum	beware
cēdo	-ēre	cessi	cessum	yield
cerno	-ēre	crēvi	crētum	behold
cingo	-ēre	cinxi	cinctum	gird
claudio	-ēre	clausi	clausum	shut
cognosco	-ēre	cognōvi	cognitum	know
cōgo	-ēre	coēgi	coactum	compel
colligo	-ēre	collēgi	collectum	collect
cōlo	-ēre	cōlui	cultum	worship, till
comēdo	-ēre	comēdi	comēsūm	eat
compello	-ēre	compūli	compulsum	compel
complēo	-ēre	complēvi	complētum	accomplish
comprehendo	-ēre	comprehendi	comprehensum	comprehend, seize
compungo	-ēre	compunxi	compunctum	grieve for
concipio	-ēre	concepī	conceptum	conceive

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
condo	-ēre	condīdi	conditum	<i>lay up, build</i>
confero	-re	contūli	collatum	<i>bring together</i>
confido	-ēre	confisus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
confiteor	-ēri	confessus sum	—	<i>confess</i>
constituo	-ēre	constitui	constitutum	<i>establish</i>
contemno	-ēre	contempsī	contemptum	<i>despise</i>
contingo	-ere	contigi	contactum	<i>happen</i>
converto	-ēre	converti	conversum	<i>convert</i>
crēdo	-ēre	crēdidī	crēditum	<i>believe</i>
creseo	-ēre	crēvi	crētum	<i>increase, grow</i>
crucifigo	-ēre	crucifixi	crucifixum	<i>crucify</i>
cupio	-ēre	cupīvi	cupitum	<i>desire</i>
curro	-ēre	oucurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
dēcerno	-ēre	dēcrēvi	dēcrētum	<i>decree</i>
dēdo	-ēre	dēdidī	dēditum	<i>give up</i>
dēfendo	-ēre	dēfendi	dēfensum	<i>defend</i>
dēficio	-ēre	dēfēcī	dēfectum	<i>fail</i>
dēleo	-ēre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
dēpōno	-ēre	dēposui	dēpositum	<i>order</i>
dēscendo	-ēre	descendi	dēscensum	<i>descend</i>
dēsēro	-ēre	dēsērui	dēsertum	<i>desert</i>
dēsprecio	-ēre	dēsprecī	dēspectum	<i>look down on</i>
dīco	-ēre	dīxī	dīctum	<i>say</i>
dīlīgo	-ēre	dīlexī	dīlectum	<i>love</i>
dīmītto	-ēre	dīmīsī	dīmīssum	<i>send away</i>
dīrīgo	-ēre	dīrēxī	dīrectum	<i>direct</i>
discēdo	-ēre	discessī	discessum	<i>depart</i>
discerno	-ēre	discrēvi	discrētum	<i>distinguish</i>
disco	-ēre	dīdīcī	—	<i>learn</i>
dīvīdo	-ēre	dīvīsī	dīvīsum	<i>divide</i>
do	dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give</i>
dōceo	-ēre	dōcui	dōctum	<i>teach</i>
dōmo	-āre	dōmūi	dōmitum	<i>subdue</i>
dūco	-ēre	duxī	ductum	<i>lead</i>
ēdo	-ēre	ēdī	ēsūm	<i>eat</i>
ējicio	-ēre	ējēcī	ējectum	<i>cast out</i>
ēmo	-ēre	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy</i>
eo	ire	īvi	ītum	<i>go</i>
ērīgo	-ēre	ērēxī	ērēctum	<i>lift</i>
ēvādo	-ēre	ēvāsī	ēvāsūm	<i>escape</i>
expello	-ēre	expūli	expulsum	<i>expel</i>
extendo	-ēre	extēdi	extensum	<i>stretch forth</i>
fācio	-ēre	fēcī	factum	<i>do, make</i>
fallo	-ēre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
fāteor	-ēri	fassus sum	—	<i>confess</i>
fēro	ferre	tūli	lātum	<i>bear</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
fido	-ēre	fisus sum	—	trust
fīgo	-ēre	fixi	fixum	fix
findo	-ēre	fidi	fissum	cleave
fin̄go	-ēre	finxi	fictum	form, feign
fio	fiēri	factus sum	—	become
flecto	-ēre	flexi	flexum	bend
flēo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	weep
flūo	-ēre	fluxi	fluxum	flow
fōdio	-ēre	fōdi	fossum	dig, pierce
fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	cherish
frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	break
fūgio	-ēre	fūgi	fūgitum	flee
fundo	-ēre	fūdi	fūsum	pour
gaudeo	-ēre	gavisus sum	—	rejoice
gēmo	-ēre	gēmui	gemitum	moan
gēro	-ēre	gessi	gestum	do, wage
gigno	-ēre	gēnui	genitum	give birth to
gradior	-i	gressus sum	—	walk
haereo	-ēre	haesi	haesum	stick
haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	drain
ignosco	-ēre	ignōvi	ignōtum	pardon
implēo	-ēre	implēvi	implētum	fill
imprimo	-ēre	impressi	impressum	impress
indūco	-ēre	induxi	inductum	lead in
indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	indultum	indulge, pardon
indūo	-ēre	indūi	indūtum	clothe
infero	-re	intūli	illatum	bring in
infundo	-ēre	infūdi	infūsum	pour in
insto	-āre	institi	—	press on
intelligo	-ēre	intellexi	intellectum	understand
intendo	-ēre	intendi	{intensum} {intentum}	incline
intercēdo	-ēre	intercessi	intercessum	intercede
interficio	-ēre	interfēcī	interfectum	kill
introeo	-īre	introlī	introitum	enter
invēnio	-īre	invēni	inventum	find
involvero	-ēre	involve	invōlūtum	wrap up
irascor	-i	irātus sum	—	be angry
jacio	-ēre	jjēcī	jactum	throw
jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	command
jungo	-ēre	junxi	junetum	join
jūvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	help
lābor	-i	lapsus sum	—	slip
lāvo	-āre	lāvi	{lotum} {lautum}	wash

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
lĕgo	-ĕre	lĕgi	lectum	<i>read, pick, choose</i>
lŏquor	-i	locutus sum	—	<i>speak</i>
lŭdo	-ĕre	lŭsi	lŭsum	<i>play</i>
lŭgeo	-ĕre	luxi	luctum	<i>mourn</i>
mălĕdico	-ĕre	mălĕdixi	mălĕdictum	<i>curse</i>
măneo	-ĕre	mansi	mansum	<i>remain</i>
—	meminisse	memini	—	<i>remember</i>
mĕto	-ĕre	messui	messum	<i>reap</i>
mĕtuo	-ĕre	mĕtui	—	<i>fear</i>
misceo	-ĕre	miscui	{ mistum } { mixtum }	<i>mix</i>
misĕreor	-ĕri	misertus sum	—	<i>pity</i>
mitto	-ĕre	mĭsi	missum	<i>send</i>
mordeo	-ĕre	mŏmordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
mŏrior	-i	mortuus sum	—	<i>die</i>
mŏveo	-ĕre	mŏvi	mŏtum	<i>move</i>
nascor	-i	nătus sum	—	<i>be born</i>
neglĕgo	-ĕre	neglexi	neglectum	<i>neglect</i>
nitor	-i	{ nisus } { nixus } sum	—	<i>strive</i>
nosco	-ĕre	nŏvi	nŏtum	<i>know</i>
nŭbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>marry</i>
obliviscor	-i	oblŭtus sum	—	<i>forget</i>
obrŭo	-ĕre	obrŭi	obrŭtum	<i>bury</i>
obtineo	-ĕre	obtinui	obtentum	<i>obtain</i>
occido	-ĕre	occŭdi	occŭsum	<i>kill</i>
occido	-ĕre	occŭdi	occăsum	<i>fall, die</i>
occŭlo	-ĕre	occŭlui	occultum	<i>hide</i>
occurro	-ĕre	occurri	occursum	<i>meet</i>
—	odisse	ŏdi	—	<i>hate</i>
offendo	-ĕre	offendi	offensum	<i>strike</i>
offero	-re	obtuli	oblătum	<i>offer</i>
opprimo	-ĕre	oppressi	oppressum	<i>oppress</i>
ordior	-iri	orsus sum	—	<i>begin</i>
orior	-iri	ortus sum	—	<i>rise</i>
ostendo	-ĕre	ostendi	ostensum	<i>show</i>
pando	-ĕre	pansi	{ pansum } { passum }	<i>spread</i>
pango	-ĕre	panxi	pacum	<i>compose</i>
parco	-ĕre	pĕperci	parsum	<i>spare</i>
părio	-ĕre	pepĕri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
pasco	-ĕre	păvi	pastum	<i>feed</i>
patior	-i	passus sum	—	<i>suffer</i>
păveo	-ĕre	păvi	—	<i>fear, quake</i>
pello	-ĕre	pĕpŭli	pulsum	<i>drive</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
pendeo	-ēre	pēpendi	—	hang (intr.)
pendo	-ēre	pependi	pensum	weigh
percūtio	-ēre	percussi	percussum	strike
perdo	-ēre	perdidi	perditum	lose, destroy
pereo	-īre	perīi	peritum	perish
perficio	-ēre	perfēci	perfectum	finish
pergo	-ēre	perrexi	perrectum	proceed
permitto	-ēre	permisi	permissum	permit
persequor	-i	persecūtus sum	—	persecute
pōto	-ēre	petīvi	petitum	seek
pingo	-ēre	pinxi	pictum	paint
plango	-ēre	planxi	planctum	lament, beat
plaudo	-ēre	plausi	plausum	applaud
pōno	-ēre	pōsui	pōsitum	place
posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	demand
possideo	-ēre	possēdi	possessum	possess
pōto	-āre	pōtāvi	{ pōtum pōtātum }	drink
praesto	-āre	praestīti	praestitum	give, excel
prēmo	-ēre	pressi	pressum	press
prōcēdo	-ēre	prōcessi	prōcessum	proceed
prōcido	-ēre	prociidi	—	fall down
prōdo	-ēre	prōdidi	prōditum	betray
prōficiātor	-i	prōfectus sum	—	set out
prōgredior	-i	prōgressus sum	—	advance
prōmitto	-ēre	prōmisi	prōmissum	promise
prōmo	-ēre	prompsi	promptum	bring out
prōtēgo	-ēre	prōtexi	prōtectum	protect
quaero	-ēre	quaesīvi	quaesitum	seek
quātio	-ēre	quassi	quassum	shake
queo	quīre	quīvi	quītum	be able
quiesco	-ēre	quiēvi	quiētum	rest
rāpio	-ēre	rāpui	raptum	seize
rēcumbō	-ēre	rēcūbui	—	redine
reddo	-ēre	reddidi	reddītum	give back
rēdimo	-ēre	rēdēmi	redemptum	redeem
rēgo	-ēre	rexi	rectum	rule
rēlinquo	-ēre	rēliqui	rēlictum	leave
rēmitto	-ēre	rēmisi	rēmissum	remit
rēpo	-ēre	repsi	reptum	creep
rēquiesco	-ēre	rēquīlēvi	requiētum	rest
rēsisto	-ēre	restīti	—	resist
respondeo	-ēre	respon-di	responsum	answer
restītūo	-ēre	restītui	restītūtum	restore
rēsurgō	-ēre	rēsurrexi	resurrectum	rise again
rēvolvō	-ēre	rēvolvi	rēvolūtum	roll back
rideo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	laugh

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
rumpo	-ĕre	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
rūo	-ĕre	rūi	{ ruptum } { rūtum }	<i>rush</i>
scando	-ĕre	scandi	scansum	<i>climb</i>
scindo	-ĕre	scidi	soissum	<i>cut, tear</i>
scribo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
sĕco	-ĕre	sĕcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
sĕdeo	-ĕre	sĕdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
sentio	-ire	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i>
sĕpĕlio	-ire	sĕpĕlivi	sĕpultum	<i>bury</i>
sĕquor	-i	secūtus sum	—	<i>follow</i>
sĕro	-ĕre	sĕrui	sertum	<i>join</i>
sĕro	-ĕre	sĕvi	sātum	<i>sow</i>
sĭno	-ĕre	sĭvi	sĭtum	<i>allow</i>
sōleo	-ĕre	sōlītus sum	—	<i>be wont</i>
solvo	-ĕre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loose</i>
spargo	-ĕre	sparsi	sparsum	<i>scatter, sprinkle</i>
sperno	-ĕre	sprĕvi	sprĕtum	<i>despise</i>
spondeo	-ĕre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>promise</i>
stātūo	-ĕre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
sterno	-ĕre	strāvi	strātum	<i>strew</i>
sto	-ĕre	stĕti	strictum	<i>stand</i>
stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	<i>bind</i>
subvĕnio	-ire	subvĕni	subventum	<i>come to help</i>
succendo	-ĕre	succendi	succensum	<i>kindle</i>
succurro	-ĕre	succurri	succursum	<i>succour</i>
suffero	-re	sustŭli	sublātum	<i>suffer</i>
sūmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take</i>
surgo	-ĕre	surrexi	surrectum	<i>rise</i>
suscĭpio	-ĕre	suscĕpi	susceptum	<i>undertake</i>
suspĭcio	-ĕre	suspexi	suspectum	<i>look up to</i>
tango	-ĕre	tĕtĭgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
tego	-ĕre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
tendo	-ĕre	tetendi	{ tentum } { tensum }	<i>stretch</i>
teneo	-ĕre	tenui	tentum	<i>hold</i>
tero	-ĕre	trĭvi	tritum	<i>rub</i>
texo	-ĕre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
tollo	-ĕre	sustŭli	sublātum	<i>take away</i>
tondeo	-ĕre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shave</i>
tōno	-ĕre	tōnui	tōnītum	<i>thunder</i>
torqueo	-ĕre	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
torreo	-ĕre	torrui	tostum	<i>roast</i>
trādo	-ĕre	trādĭdi	trādītum	<i>betray</i>
trāho	-ĕre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
transfigo	-ĕre	transfixi	transfixum	<i>pierce</i>

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Meaning.</i>
tremō	-ēre	tremui	—	tremble
tribuo	-ēre	tribui	tribūtum	bestow
unguo	-ēre	unxi	unctum	anoint
urgeo	-ēre	ursi	—	urge
ūro	-ēre	ussi	ustum	burn
ūtor	-i	ūsus sum	—	use
vādo	-ēre	vāsi	—	go
vēho	-ēre	vexi	vectum	carry
vello	-ēre	{ velli } { vulsi }	vulsum	pluck
vendo	-ēre	vendidi	venditum	sell
venio	-īre	vēni	ventum	come
verto	-ēre	verti	versum	turn
vēto	-āre	vētui	vētūm	forbid
video	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	see
vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinctum	bind
vinco	-ēre	vīci	victum	conquer
vivo	-ēre	vixi	victum	live

# SUMMARY OF SYNTAX

## I.

### USE OF CASES.

1. **The Nominative Case**—subject of sentence:  
*e.g.*, **Discípuli** fugérunt, *the disciples fled.*
2. **The Vocative Case**—case of person addressed:  
*e.g.*, **Miserére nobis, Dómine**, *have mercy on us, ( ) Lord.*
3. **The Accusative Case.**
  - (i.) Object of sentence:  
*e.g.*, **Regem** vidérunt, *they saw the king.*
  - (ii.) Duration of time:  
*e.g.*, **Tres dies** manebámus, *we remained three days.*
  - (iii.) Extent of space:  
*e.g.*, **Tria millia pássuum** progréssi sunt, *they advanced three miles.*
  - (iv.) Goal (usually with preposition):  
**Ad urbem** venérunt, *they came to the city.*
  - (v.) Double accusative (after verbs of asking, teaching, concealing):  
*e.g.*, **Eos panem** rogávi, *I asked them for bread.*
4. **The Genitive Case.**
  - (i.) Possessive:  
*e.g.*, Num custos **fratris mei** ego sum? *Am I my brother's keeper?*
  - (ii.) Partitive:  
*e.g.*, Quot **vestrum** vénient? *How many of you will come?*
  - (iii.) Objective:  
*e.g.*, **Miserére mei**, *have mercy on me.*
  - (iv.) Descriptive:  
*e.g.*, Quid tímidi estis, **módicae fidei**? *Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith?*
5. **The Dative Case.**
  - (i.) Indirect Object:  
*e.g.*, **Hoc mihi** dedit, *he gave this to me.*

- (ii.) Possessive:  
*e.g., Liber est mihi, I have a book (lit. there is a book to me).*
- (iii.) Predicative:  
*e.g., Éritis ódio ómnibus géntibus, you shall be hated by all nations (lit. you shall be for a hatred to all nations).*
- (iv.) After many verbs in Latin (*e.g., credo, impero, parco, páreo, suádeo, sérvio, etc.*):  
*e.g., Tibi crēdo, I believe you.*

## 6. The Ablative Case.

- (i.) Instrumental:  
*e.g., Rex gládio occísus est, the king was slain by a sword.*
- (ii.) Agent (with *ab*):  
*e.g., Rex a mlite occísus est, the king was slain by a soldier.*
- (iii.) Separation (often with a preposition):  
*e.g., Líbera nos a malo, deliver us from evil.*
- (iv.) Manner (usually with *cum*):  
*e.g., Suscepérunt verbum cum omni aviditáte, they received the word with all eagerness.*
- (v.) Cause:  
*e.g., Morbo mórtuus est, he died of disease.*
- (vi.) Price:  
*e.g., Hoc emi denário, I bought this for penny.*
- (vii.) Time:  
*e.g., Tértiâ vigiliâ venit, he came at the third watch.*
- (viii.) Measure of difference:  
*e.g., Ille multo sapiéntior est, he is far wiser.*
- (ix.) Comparison:  
*e.g., Templo major est hic: there is here a greater than the temple.*
- (x.) Locative (usually with a preposition):  
*In urbe est, he is in the city.*
- (xi.) Description:  
*e.g., Beáti mundo corde, Blessed are the clean of heart.*
- (xii.) After certain adjectives (*e.g., dignus, indignus, plenus, conténtus, etc.*):  
*e.g., Plena gratiâ, full of grace.*

- (xiii.) After certain verbs (*e.g.*, **irnor, fungor, pótior, utor, vescor**, etc.):  
*e.g.*, **Hóc stilo utor**, *I am using this pen.*
- (xiv.) Ablative Absolute:  
*e.g.*, **Hoc audito**, *abierunt*, *hearing this, they went away.*

## II.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

The **Present, Future, Future-Perfect**, and **Perfect** (with *have*) Tenses of the Indicative Mood are called **primary** Tenses, and must be followed by corresponding (primary) tenses of the Subjunctive in a subordinate clause, if the Subjunctive Mood is required. The primary tenses of the Subjunctive are the **Present** and **Perfect**.

*e.g.*, **Venio ut te videam**, *I am coming to see you.*  
**Rogabit quid fecerim**, *he will ask what I have done.*

The **Imperfect, Pluperfect**, and **Perfect** (without *have*) Tenses of the Indicative are **secondary** tenses, and must be followed by secondary (**Imperfect** or **Pluperfect**) tenses of the Subjunctive.

*e.g.*, **Veni ut te vidérem**, *I came to see you.*  
**Rogávit quid fecissem**, *he asked what I had done.*

This rule of sequence of tenses is, however, often violated in Ecclesiastical Latin.

## III.

## CLAUSES.

## 1. Noun Clauses.

## (i.) Indirect Statement.

## (1) Accusative and Infinitive Construction:

*e.g.*, **Dicit regem mórtuum esse**, *he says that the king is dead.*

(2) **quod, quia, or quóniam** with Indicative:

*e.g.*, **Confíteor quia peccávi**, *I confess that I have sinned.*

(3) **quod, quia, or quóniam** with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, **Scimus quóniam hoc verum sit**, *we know that this is true.*

N.B.—(2) and (3) are not found in Classical Latin.

(ii.) **Indirect Command.**

(1) Infinitive Construction:\*

*e.g.*, **Jussit eum abire**, *he ordered him to depart.*(2) An **ut** clause followed by Subjunctive.*e.g.*, **Orávit eum ut veníret**, *he prayed him to come.*(3) A clause in the Subjunctive without **ut** :*e.g.*, **Vos obsécro audiátis me**, *I beg you to hear me.*(iii.) **Indirect Question.**

(1) An Interrogative word followed by Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, **Eum rogávi quid fáceret**, *I asked him what he was doing.*

(2) An Interrogative word followed by the Indicative:

*e.g.*, **Dómine, nescimus quo vadis**, *Lord, we know not whither thou goest.*

N.B.—(2) is not found in Classical Latin.

**2. Adjectival Clauses.**

(1) A Relative Pronoun followed by Indicative:

*e.g.*, **Hic est qui regem occidit**, *this is the man who slew the king.*

(2) A Relative Pronoun followed by Subjunctive.

(a) to express purpose:

*e.g.*, **Hómínes misit qui hoc fácerent**, *he sent men to do this.*

(b) to express result:

*e.g.*, **Pater tales quaerit qui adórent eum**, *the Father seeketh such to adore him.*(c) after **dignus** and **indignus** :*e.g.*, **Dignus est qui hoc fáciat**, *he is worthy to do this.***3. Adverbial Clauses.**(i.) **Temporal Clauses.**(1) A temporal Conjunction (*e.g.*, **dum**, **quando**, **ut**, **postquam**, etc.), followed by Indicative:*e.g.*, **Dum spiro, spero**, *while I breathe I hope*; **Venit nox, quando nemo potest operári**, *the night cometh when no man can work.*(2) A temporal Conjunction (*e.g.*, **cum**, **donec**, etc.) followed by the Subjunctive:*e.g.*, **Cum hoc fecissent**, *when they had done this they departed.*\* In Classical Latin this is limited to the verbs **júbeo** and **veto**.

(ii.) **Final Clauses**—expressing purpose.(1) An **ut** clause with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *Jesus ductus est in desértum ut tentarétur, Jesus was led into the desert to be tempted.*

(2) An **ut** clause with **non** (if negative) with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *Nolíte judicáre ut non judicémini, judge not, that you may not be judged.*

(3) A **ne** clause (if negative) with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *In mánibus tollent te, ne forte offéndas ad lápidem pedem tuum, in their hands shall they bear thee up, lest perhaps thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

## (4) A Relative clause with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *Hómines adsunt qui respónsum dent, the men are here to give an answer.*

## (5) An Infinitive clause:

*e.g.*, *Ventúrus est judicáre vivos et mortuos, He shall come to judge both the living and the dead.*

N.B.—(2) and (5) are not found in Classical Latin.

(iii.) **Consecutive Clauses**—expressing result.(1) **ut** (or **ut non** if negative) with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *Flumen tam altum est ut non póssimus transíre, the river is so deep that we cannot cross it.*

## (2) A Relative with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *Pater tales quaerit qui adórent eum, the Father seeketh such to adore him.*

(iv.) **Causal Clauses.**(1) A clause introduced by **quia**, **quóniam**, **quod**, with Indicative:

*e.g.*, *Exi a me, quia homo peccátor sum, Dómine, Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, O Lord.*

(2) A clause introduced by **cum** (=since) with Subjunctive:

*e.g.*, *Hi hómines contúrbant civitátem nostram, cum sint Judaí, these men disturb our city being (i.e., because they are) Jews.*

(3) A clause introduced by **quia**, **quóniam**, or **quod**, with Subjunctive, to imply suggested reason:

*e.g.*, *Eum occidit quod próditor esset, he put him to death on the ground that he was a traitor.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin the Subjunctive often follows **quia**, **quóniam**, and **quod** to express actual cause.

(v.) **Concessive Clauses.**

A Clause introduced by **cum, quamvis, etsi, quamquam, etc.** (meaning *although*), with Subjunctive:

*e.g., Et non invenerunt, cum multi falsi testes accessissent, and they found not, although many false witnesses had come in.*

(vi.) **Conditional Clauses.**

(1) Open conditions, in present or past time, implying nothing as regards fulfilment or non-fulfilment—Indicative in both clauses:

*e.g., Si hoc facis, peccas, if you are doing this, you are doing wrong; Si hoc fecisti, peccavisti, if you did this, you did wrong.*

(2) Unfulfilled Conditions.

(a) In present time, Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses:

*e.g., Si adesset, ei crederem, if he were here, I would believe him.*

(b) In past time, Pluperfect Subjunctive in both clauses: *e.g., Si adfuissem, hoc tibi dedissem, if I had been there, I would have given you this.*

(c) Past time in protasis (*if* clause), present in apodosis (principal clause); Pluperfect Subjunctive in protasis, Imperfect Subjunctive in apodosis:

*e.g., Si hoc fecisses, non in carcere nunc esses, if you had done this, you would not now be in prison.*

(3) Future Conditions.

(a) Probable—Future or Future-Perfect Indicative in protasis, Future Indicative (or Imperative) in apodosis:

*e.g., Si in urbem venero, hoc emam, if I come to town, I will buy this.*

(b) Possible but Improbable—Present Subjunctive in both clauses:

*e.g., Si hoc facias, pecces, if you were to do this, you would do wrong.*

## IV.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute consists of a noun and participle, a pronoun and participle, or a noun or pronoun and adjective, together in the Ablative case, forming a phrase roughly answering to the Nominative Absolute in English:

*e.g., Her father being dead, she had to leave home.*

This in Latin would be **patre mórtuo**, domo abire eam opórtuit.

The Ablative Absolute is a very common construction in Latin owing to the absence of the past participle active. It is impossible to say in Latin, *having done this he went home*; the sentence must be turned passively, *this having been done, he went home*, and the Ablative Absolute construction used: **Hoc factó**, domum ivit.

The Ablative Absolute may represent the following kinds of clauses:—

## (i.) Temporal:

*e.g., His dictis, ábiit, when he had said this, he departed.*

## (ii.) Causal:

*e.g., Fratre mórtuo, domum rédiit, because his brother was dead, he returned home.*

## (iii.) Concessive:

*e.g., Ómnibus audientibus nemo locútus est, though all were listening, no one spoke.*

## V.

## QUESTIONS.

Questions are asked in Latin—

## (i.) By an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb:

*e.g., Quid facis? What are you doing?*

## (ii.) By a mark of interrogation at the end of the sentence:\*

*e.g., Tu es rex Judaeórum? Art thou the king of the Jews?*

(iii.) By **nonne** (or **an**) if an affirmative answer is expected:

*e.g., Nonne hoc verum est? Surely this is true?*

(iv.) By **num** (or **numquid**) if a negative answer is expected:

*e.g., Num custos fratris mei ego sum? Am I my brother's keeper?*

\* In Classical Latin the particle **-ne** is suffixed to the first word in the sentence—*e.g., Tunc es rex Judaeórum?*

## VI.

**TIME.**

Time is expressed in Latin—

- (i.) By the Accusative to denote "how long":  
*e.g., Tres horas ibi manébat, he remained there three hours.*
- (ii.) By the Ablative to denote:  
 (a) Point of time (time "when"):  
*e.g., Tertiâ horâ profectus est, he set out at the third hour.*  
 (b) Time "within which":  
*e.g., Quinque diébus redibit, he will return within five days.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin the Ablative is often used for time "how long":

*e.g., Cum jejunásset quadraginta diébus et quadraginta noctibus, postea esúriit, when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, afterwards he was hungry.*

## VII.

**WISHES.**

- (i.) Wishes for the future are expressed by the Present Subjunctive (negative *ne*):  
*e.g., Cito véniat! May he come quickly! Ne péreas! May you not perish!*
- (ii.) Wishes for the present are expressed by the Imperfect Subjunctive with *útinam* (=would that) (negative *ne*):  
*e.g., Útinam adésset! Would that he were here!*
- (iii.) Wishes for the past are expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive with *útinam* (negative *ne*):  
*Útinam ne hoc fecíssem! Would that I had not done this!*

## VIII.

## PROHIBITIONS.

Prohibitions are expressed by—

- (i.) **Noli** with the Infinitive:  
*e.g., Noli hoc fácere, do not do this (lit. be unwilling to do this).*
- (ii.) **Ne** with the Perfect Subjunctive:  
*e.g., Ne hoc féceris, do not do this.*
- (iii.) **Ne** with the Present Subjunctive:  
*e.g., Ne occídas, do not kill.*

N.B.—In Ecclesiastical Latin **non** is used as well as **ne** :  
*e.g., Non miréris, wonder not.*

## IX.

## THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

The **Gerund** is a Verbal noun ending in **-ndum** (2nd Declension neuter), and is Active in Voice.

The **Gerundive** is a Verbal Adjective ending in **-ndus, -a, -um**, and is Passive in Voice. Only transitive verbs have a Gerundive.

The Gerund or Gerundive used with the verb *to be* expresses obligation. The person on whom the obligation falls is put in the Dative case (*Dative of Agent*):

- e.g., Nobis redeúndum est, we must return (Gerund).*  
*Inimíci nobis amánda sunt, we must love our enemies (Gerundive) (lit. our enemies must be loved by us).*

The Gerund is used as a verbal noun in the oblique cases:

- e.g., Cupído discénda, the desire of learning.*  
**Legéndo** studet, *he is devoted to reading.*  
**Docéndo** discimus, *we learn by teaching.*

If the verb is followed by a direct object, the Gerundive is used instead of the Gerund, the noun being used in the case required, and the Gerundive agreeing with it in number, gender, and case:

- e.g., Cupído legéndae epístolae, the desire of reading the letter.*  
**Legénda** libris studet, *he is devoted to reading books.*  
**Docéndo** discipulo ipsi discimus, *by teaching a pupil we learn ourselves.*

The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive after the preposition *ad*, or the Genitive after *causâ*, expresses purpose:

*e.g.*, *Progréssi sunt ad oppugnândum*, *they advanced to attack* (Gerund).

*Progréssi sunt ad urbem oppugnândam*, *they advanced to attack the city* (Gerundive).

*Hoc dixit causâ nobis suadendi*,\* *he said this to persuade us* (Gerund).

*Hoc dixit causâ mei juvâdi*, *he said this to help me* (Gerundive).

## X.

### THE SUPINES.

The Supines are rarely used in Latin. The Supine in *-um* is used to express purpose after a verb of motion:

*e.g.*, *Exi lusum*, *go out to play*.

The Supine in *-u* is used after an adjective where English uses an Infinitive:

*e.g.*, *Mirâbile dictu*, *wonderful to relate*.

\* Verbs that govern the Dative are intransitive in Latin, and therefore have no Gerundive.

## FAMILIAR LATIN PRAYERS AND HYMNS.

*(The English of all words used in the following passages will be found in the Vocabulary at the end of the book.)*

### PATER NOSTER.

Pater noster, qui es in coelis, sanctificétur nomen tuum; advéniat regnum tuum; fiat volúntas tua, sicut in coelo, et in terrâ. Panem nostram quotidíanum da nobis hódie. Et dimítte nobis débíta nostra, sicut et nos dimíttimus debitóribus nostris. Et ne nos indúcas in tentatiónem: sed líbera nos a malo.

### AVE MARÍA.

Ave María, grátiâ plena; Dóminus tecum; benedícta tu in muliéribus, et benedíctus fructus ventris tui, Jesus. Sancta María, Mater Dei, ora pro nobis peccatóribus, nunc et in horâ mortis nostrae.

### APOSTLES' CREED.

Credo in Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Creatórem coeli et terrae. Et in Jesum Christum, Fílium ejus únicum, Dóminum nostrum; qui concéptus est de Spíritu Sancto, natus ex Mariá Vírgine, passus sub Póntio Piláto, crucifixus, mórtuus, et sepúltus; descendit ad inferos; tértiâ die resurrexit a mórtuis; ascendit ad coelos; sedet ad dexteram Dei Patris omnipoténtis; inde ventúrus est judicáre vivos et mórtuos. Credo in Spíritum Sanctum, sanctam Eclésiám Cathólicam, Sanctórum communió-nem, remissionem peccatórum, carnis resurrectionem, vitam aeternam.

### GLÓRIA.

Glória Patri, et Fílio, et Spíritui Sancto. Sicut erat in princípío, et nunc, et semper, et in saécula saeculórum.

### NICENE CREED.

Credo in unum Deum, Patrem omnipoténtem, Factórem coeli et terrae, visibílium ómnium et invisibílium. Et in unum Dóminum Jesum Christum, Fílium Dei unigénitum, et ex Patre natum ante ómnia saécula. Deum de Deo, Lumen de Lúmíne; Deum

verum de Deo vero; génitum non factum; consubstantiálem Patri, per quem ómnia facta sunt. Qui propter nos hómines et propter nostram salutem, descendit de coelis. Et incarnátus est de Spíritu Sancto, ex Mariá Vírgine; et Homo factus est. Crucifixus étiam pro nobis, sub Póntio Piláto passus et sepúltus est. Et resurrexit tértiâ die secúndum Scriptúras; et ascendit in coelum, sedet ad dexteram Patris; et íterum ventúrus est cum gloriâ iudicáre vivos et mórtuos; cujus regni non erit finis. Et in Spíritu Sanctum Dóminum et vivificántem, qui ex Patre Filioque procédit: qui cum Patre et Fílio simul adorátur et conglorificátur; qui locútus est per Prophétas. Et unam sanctam Cathólicam et Apostólicam Ecclésiám. Confíteor unum baptísma in remissionem peccatórum. Et expécto resurrectionem mortuórum, et vitam ventúri saéculi.

#### GLÓRIA IN EXCÉLSIS DEO.

Glória in excélsis Deo; et in terrâ pax homínibus bonae voluntátis. Laudámus te; benedicimus te; adorámus te; glorificámus te. Grátias ágimus tibi propter magnam glóriam tuam, Dómine Deus, Rex coeléstis, Deus Pater omniúptens. Dómine Fili unigénite Jesu Christe; Dómine Deus, Agnus Dei, Fílius Patris. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, miserére nobis. Qui tollis peccáta mundi, súscipe deprecationem nostram. Qui sedes ad dexteram Patris, miserére nobis. Quóniam tu solus sanctus, Tu solus Dóminus, Tu solus altíssimus, Jesu Christe. Cum Sancto Spíritu, in gloriâ Dei Patris.

#### THE ANGELUS.

V. Angelus Dómini nuntiávit Mariæ.

R. Et concépit de Spíritu Sancto.

Ave Mariá, grátiâ plena, etc.

V. Ecce ancilla Dómini.

R. Fiat mihi secúndum verbum tuum.

Ave Mariá.

V. Et verbum caro factum est.

R. Et habitávit in nobis.

Ave Mariá.

Grátiam tuam quaesumus, Dómine, méntibus nostris infúnde, ut qui, ángelo nuntiánte, Christi Fílii tui Incarnationem cognóvimus, per Passiónem ejus et crucem ad Resurrectionis glóriam perducámur. Per eúndem Christum Dóminum nostrum.

## MEMORÁRE.

Memoráre, O piíssima Virgo María, non esse audítum a saéculo, quemquam ad tua curréntem praesídia, tua implorántem auxília, tua peténtem suffrágia, esse derelictum. Ego, tali animátus confidentiâ, ad te, Virgo Vírginum Mater, curro; ad te vénio; coram te gemens peccátor assisto. Noli, Mater Verbi, verba mea despícere, sed audi propítia et exaudi.

## SALVE REGÍNA.

Salve Regína, mater misericórdiae; vita, dulcédo, et spes nostra, salve. Ad te clamámus, éxules fílii Hévae, ad te suspirámus, geméntes et flentes in hâc lacrymárum valle.

Eia ergo, Advocáta nostra, illos tuos misericórdes óculos ad nos convérte; et Jesum, benedíctum fructum ventris tui, nobis post hoc exílium osténde. O clemens, O pia, O dulcis Virgo María.

V. Ora pro nobis, sancta Dei Génitrix.

R. Ut digni efficiámur promissionibus Christi.

## REGÍNA COELI.

Regína coeli laetáre, Allelúia.

Quia quem meruísti portáre, Allelúia.

Resurréxit sicut dixit, Allelúia.

Ora pro nobis Deum, Allelúia.

## AVE VERUM.

Ave verum Corpus natum  
Ex Mariá Vírgine,  
Vere passum, immolátum  
In cruce pro hómine.

Cujus latus perforátum  
Vero fluxit sáanguine,  
Esto nobis praegustátum  
Mortis in exámine.

O clemens, o pie,

O dulcis Jesu, Fili Maríae !

## O SALUTÁRIS.

O Salutáris Hóstia,  
Quae coeli pandis óstium:  
Bella premunt hostília,  
Da robur, fer auxílium.

Uni trinóque Dómino  
Sit sempitérna glória,  
Qui vitam sine término  
Nobis donet in pátriâ.

## TANTUM ERGO.

Tantum ergo Sacramentum  
 Veneremur cernui:  
 Et antiquum documentum  
 Novo cedat ritui;  
 Praestet fides supplementum  
 Sensuum defectui.

Genitori Genitroque  
 Laus et jubilatio,  
 Salus, honor, virtus quoque,  
 Sit et benedictio:  
 Procedenti ab utroque  
 Compar sit laudatio.

## DE PROFUNDIS.

1. De profundis clamavi ad te, Domine: Domine exaudi vocem meam.
2. Fiant aures tuae intendentes, in vocem deprecationis meae.
3. Si iniquitates observaveris, Domine: Domine, quis sustinebit ?
4. Quia apud te propitiatio est: et propter legem tuam sustinui te, Domine.
5. Sustinuit anima mea in verbo ejus: speravit anima mea in Domino.
6. A custodia matutina usque ad noctem: speret Israel in Domino.
7. Quia apud Dominum misericordia: et copiosa apud eum redemptio.
8. Et ipse redimet Israel, ex omnibus iniquitatibus ejus.

## LITANY OF LORETO.

KYRIE eleison.  
*Kyrie eleison.*  
 Christe eleison.  
*Christe eleison.*  
 Kyrie eleison.  
*Kyrie eleison.*  
 Christe audi nos.  
*Christe exaudi nos.*  
 Pater de coelis Deus, *miserere nobis.*  
 Fili Redemptor mundi Deus, *miserere nobis.*  
 Spiritus Sancte Deus, *miserere nobis.*

Sancta Trinitas, unus Deus,  
*miserere nobis.*  
 Sancta Maria, *ora pro nobis.*  
 Sancta Dei Genitrix,  
 Sancta Virgo Virginum,  
 Mater Christi,  
 Mater divinae gratiae,  
 Mater purissima,  
 Mater castissima,  
 Mater inviolata,  
 Mater intemerata,  
 Mater amabilis,  
 Mater admirabilis,  
 Mater boni consilii,

Mater Creatóris,  
 Mater Salvatóris,  
 Virgo prudentíssima,  
 Virgo veneránda,  
 Virgo praedicánda,  
 Virgo potens,  
 Virgo clemens,  
 Virgo fidélis,  
 Spéculum justítiae,  
 Sedes sapiéntiae,  
 Causa nostrae laetítiae,  
 Vas spirituále,  
 Vas honorábile,  
 Vas insigne devotiónis,  
 Rosa mýstica,  
 Turris Davidica,  
 Turris ebúrnea,  
 Domus aúrea,  
 Foederis arca,  
 Jánua coeli,  
 Stella matutína,  
 Salus infirmórum,

Refúgium peccatórum,  
 Consolátrix afflictórum,  
 Auxílium Christianórum,  
 Regina angelórum,  
 Regina patriarchárum,  
 Regina prophetárum,  
 Regina apostolórum,  
 Regina mártýrum,  
 Regina confessorum,  
 Regina víginum,  
 Regina sanctorum ónium,  
 Regina sine labe origináli concepta.  
 Regina sacratíssimi Rosárii,  
 Regina pacis,  
 Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *parce nobis, Dómine.*  
 Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *exaúdi nos, Dómine.*  
 Agnus Dei, qui tollis peccáta mundi, *miserére nobis.*

## THE MEANINGS AND DERIVATIONS OF FAMILIAR CATHOLIC TERMS.

**ASPERGES**, from the Latin *aspérge*, *I sprinkle*: the ceremony of sprinkling the altar, clergy, and congregation with Holy Water at the beginning of High Mass, so called from the first word of the antiphon with which the ceremony begins: "**Aspérge me, Dómine, hyssópo, et mundábor,**" "*Thou shalt sprinkle me with hyssop and I shall be cleansed*" (Psalm L, 9).

**CARDINAL**, from the Latin *cardo, cárdinis*, *a hinge*: hence the point on which anything turns. The original Hebrew word used for the Princes of the Philistines also means *an axle or hinge*.\* The term *cardinal* was first used in Christian times to mean the permanent clergy of any church—*i.e.*, those priests who were so indispensable to the work of the church that everything seemed to revolve round them, just as a door turns on its hinge.

**CENACLE**, from the Latin *cenáculum*, which literally meant *an eating-room*; then, as this was usually in the upper part of the house, it was used to mean an upper room, or even a garret or attic. The word is now used for the upper chamber at Jerusalem where Our Lord partook of the Last Supper with the Apostles.

**CHASUBLE**, from the Latin *cásula*, a diminutive of *casa*, *a hut*: the chief vestment worn by the celebrant at Mass.

**CIBORIUM**, from the Latin *cibórium* (Greek, *κιβώριον*), which literally meant the seed-pod of the Egyptian bean, but which was also used for a drinking vessel resembling the bean in shape. In England the term *Ciborium* is applied to the vessel in which the Blessed Sacrament is kept.

**CONFIRMATION**, from the Latin *confirmo*, *I strengthen*, hence the name given to the Sacrament which confers strengthening grace.

**FERIA**. The Latin word *fériae*, *holidays*, meant days on which the ancient Romans abstained from political and legislative work, and gave their slaves a holiday. Such days were those consecrated to any deity. Later, the *fériae* were kept for the observance of Christian feasts. To-day the term *féria* denotes the days of

\* Cf. Josh. xiii, 3; Judg. iii, 3.

the week from Monday to Friday inclusive; this use of the word probably comes from the custom in the early Church of calling the Monday in Easter week the second feast-day, or *féria secúnda*, the Tuesday the third feast-day, or *féria tértia*, and so on; the practice was then adopted for all the days of the year except Saturdays and Sundays.

**GENUFLECT**, from the Latin *genu*, a knee, and *flecto*, I bend; literally, therefore, to genuflect means to bend the knee, though for a correct genuflection the knee should touch the ground.

**INDULGENCE**, from the Latin *indulgéntia*, a Roman legal term meaning a remission of punishment or taxation. A Plenary Indulgence, from the Latin *plénus*, full, is therefore an indulgence remitting the full temporal punishment due to sin.

**JÁNVA COELI**, *Gate of Heaven*, a title given to our Lady in the Litany of Loreto. Janus was the most ancient of all the kings of Italy. He built a small town on the River Tiber, called Janiculum, which was afterwards the name of one of the seven hills of Rome. After his death he was ranked among the gods, and was represented with two faces, one looking backward over the past, the other looking forward over the future. He had a small temple in the Forum,\* with two doors opposite each other, which stood open in time of war, and shut in time of peace.† All doors, gates, avenues, and beginnings were sacred to Janus, and January, the month which begins the year, was called after him. In religious ceremonies his name was invoked first, since he was said to preside over the gate through which the prayers of men passed to the immortal gods. The word *jánua*, a gateway, or door, is derived from Janus, the god of gateways, and so, in the Litany of Loreto, the pagan idea which centred round the old Roman god, Janus, is transferred to our Lady, who is indeed the gateway through which our prayers pass to Heaven.

**MASS**, from the Latin *missa*, another form of *missio*, dismissal. The term was originally used for the two dismissals during the service, the first that of the catechumens, after the sermon, the second that of the rest of the congregation at the end of the proceedings.‡ It is curious that the word which signified a dismissal from the service should come to be used for the service

\* The Forum was a large open space between the Palatine and Capitoline hills, where most of the business of Rome was transacted.

† In the course of seven hundred years they were only shut on three occasions.

‡ *Of. Ite, missa est, Go, the mass is finished.*

itself, and some authorities support the explanation that in the sixth and seventh centuries, when the term *missa* began to have the meaning which we give to the word Mass, short Masses, consisting of the Canon only, were said at the end of the Canonical Hours, and came to be regarded as services of dismissal.

**MONSTRANCE**, from the Latin *monstro*, *I show* : the vessel in which the Blessed Sacrament is exposed or "shown forth" at Benediction or in procession.

**PATEN**, from the Latin *pátina*, *a dish* : the plate used to receive the Host consecrated at the Mass.

**PISCINA**, from the Latin *piscina*, *a fishpond*, or tank for keeping fish (from *piscis*, *a fish*). Later the word came to mean a basin or bath, and in the early Latin Church it was used to denote the baptismal font. In the Middle Ages it was applied to the niche in the wall on the Epistle side of the altar, containing a perforated basin through which was poured the water used in washing the priest's hands.

**PONTIFF, PONTIFICATE**, from the Latin *Póntifex*, which may be derived from *pons*, *pontis*, *a bridge*, and the root of *fácio*, *I make* or *build*, and thus means a bridge-builder. The term *Póntifex Máximus* meant the High Priest at Rome in ancient times; he was looked on as the builder of the bridge between gods and men. The office of Pontifex dates from the earliest period of Roman history.

**RUBRICS**, from the Latin *ruber*, *red*. The term *rúbrica* was first used to mean the red earth used by a carpenter in drawing a line on a piece of wood to show where to cut it. Later the word passed into the language of the law, and was used for the titles, maxims, decisions, etc., which were written in red. In Christian times it came to mean the directions and instructions to be followed in the Mass and other services; these were written in red ink, while the passages for recitation were written in black.

**SACRAMENT**, from the Latin *sacraméntum*, which was originally a legal term, and meant the *deposit*, or *pledge*, which both the plaintiff and the defendant were obliged to make at the beginning of a lawsuit. The one who lost his case forfeited the deposit, which was set aside for some sacred purpose, or for use in the temple. The word next came to mean the pledge, or oath, taken by a Roman soldier not to desert his standard in battle, and this meaning was afterwards extended to any oath or pledge. In Christian times it first meant the oath which a soldier of Christ

took when he swore to be true to his standard or faith; next it meant anything which sanctified men; and finally it was defined by the Church as "a visible sign of invisible grace instituted for our justification."

**VIATICUM**, a Latin word which originally meant *journey money*, or *provisions for the way* (from *via*, a road or way). Next it came to mean provision for the journey of life, and finally the term was applied to Holy Communion when administered to the dying, the provision for the soul on its last journey from this world into the next.

# VOCABULARY

## ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	= ablative.
<i>acc.</i>	= accusative.
<i>adj.</i>	= adjective.
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb.
<i>c.</i>	= common gender.
<i>comp.</i>	= comparative.
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction.
<i>f.</i>	= feminine.
<i>m.</i>	= masculine.
<i>n.</i>	= noun.
<i>neut.</i>	= neuter.

<i>part.</i>	= participle.
<i>pass.</i>	= passive.
<i>perf.</i>	= perfect.
<i>pers.</i>	= person.
<i>pl.</i>	= plural.
<i>prep.</i>	= preposition.
<i>pres.</i>	= present.
<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun.
<i>superl.</i>	= superlative.
<i>v.</i>	= verb.
<i>v. dep.</i>	= verb deponent.

Numerals indicate the declension of nouns and conjugation of verbs.  
Long vowels are marked (—)—*e.g.*, amāre.

### A

*a, ab, prep. with abl.*, from, by, away from.  
*abeo, ii, itum, (4)*, to go away, depart.  
*abnego, (1)*, to deny.  
*abscondo, di, ditum, (3)*, to hide.  
*accēdo, cessi, cessum, (3)*, to come, approach.  
*accendo, di, sum, (3)*, to kindle.  
*acceptābilis, e, adj.*, acceptable.  
*accipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3)*, to receive, take.  
*ad, prep. with acc.*, to, at, unto, for.  
*addūco, xi, ctum, (3)*, to bring.  
*adesse, pres. infinitive of adsum.*  
*adhuc, adv.*, still.  
*adjutōrium, i, n. (2) neut.*, help, aid.  
*adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, (1)*, to help, aid.  
*admirābilis, e, adj.*, admirable.  
*admiror, (1), v. dep.*, to wonder.  
*adōro, (1)*, to adore.  
*adsum, adfui, adesse*, to be present, to draw nigh.  
*advenio, vēni, ventum, (4)*, to come, approach.  
*adversum, prep. with acc.*, against.  
*adversus, prep. with acc.*, against.  
*advocāta, ae, n. (1) f.*, advocate.  
*aedifico, (1)*, to build.  
*aestimo, (1)*, to think.

*aetas, ātis, n. (3) f.*, age.  
*aeternus, a, m, adj.*, eternal, everlasting.  
*in aeternum*, for ever.  
*affero, attuli, allātum, afferre*, to bring nigh.  
*afflictus, a, um, afflicted.*  
*ager, ri, n. (2) m.*, a field.  
*agnus, i, n. (2) m.*, a lamb.  
*ago, ēgi, actum, (3)*, to do, render, give, drive.  
*ait, 3rd pers. pres. of aio*, to say.  
*āla, ae, n. (1) f.*, a wing.  
*albus, a, um, adj.*, white.  
*alius, a, ud, adj.*, other, else.  
*alius . . . alius*, one . . . another.  
*alii . . . alii*, some . . . others.  
*almus, a, um, adj.*, sweet, dear.  
*altāre, ris, n. (3) neut.*, an altar.  
*altus, a, um, adj.*, high, deep.  
*amābilis, e, adj.*, amiable, lovely.  
*ambo, ae, o, adj.*, both.  
*ambulo, (1)*, to walk.  
*amicus, i, n. (2) m.*, a friend.  
*amo, (1)*, to love.  
*amor, ōris, n. (3) m.*, love.  
*amplius, adv. comp.*, yet more.  
*an, conj.*, or.  
*ancilla, ae, n. (1) f.*, a handmaid.  
*angelus, i, n. (2) m.*, an angel.  
*anima, ae, n. (1) f.*, soul, life.  
*animātus, a, um, adj.*, animated.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before.  
 antecēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to go before.  
 antiquus, a, um, *adj.*, ancient.  
 aperio, ui, ertum, (4), to open.  
 apertus, *past part. of aperio*, open.  
 Apostolus, i, n. (2) *m.*, an Apostle.  
 appāreo, (2), to appear.  
 apprehendo, di, sum, (3), to take, lay hold of.  
 appropinquo, (1), to approach, draw nigh.  
 apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, with, among.  
 aqua, ae, n. (1) *f.*, water.  
 arbor, oris, n. (3) *f.*, a tree.  
 arca, ae, n. (1) *f.*, an ark.  
 ardens, *pres. part. of ardeo*, burning.  
 ardeo, arsi, arsum, (2), to burn, glow.  
 āridus, a, um, *adj.*, dry, withered.  
 aro, (1), to plough.  
 arōma, atis, n. (3) *neut.*, sweet-spice.  
 ascendo, di, sum, (3), to ascend, go up.  
 aspergo, si, sum, (3), to sprinkle.  
 aspicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to look, see.  
 assisto, stiti, (3), to stand by, be present.  
 assūmo, sumpsī, sumptum, (3), to assume, take up.  
 at, *conj.*, but.  
 atque, *conj.*, and.  
 auctor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, an author.  
 audax, dācis, *adj.*, bold, audacious.  
 audeo, ausus sum, (2), *v. semi-dep.*, to dare.  
 audio, (4), to hear.  
 aureus, a, um, *adj.*, golden.  
 auris, is, n. (3) *f.*, an ear.  
 ausus, *past part. of audeo*, having dared.  
 aut, *conj.*, or.  
 autem, *conj.*, but, moreover.  
 auxilium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, help, aid.  
 avē, hail!  
 avis, is, n. (3) *f.*, a bird.

## B

baptisma, atis, n. (3) *neut.*, baptism.  
 baptiso, (1), to baptize.  
 beātus, a, um, *adj.*, blessed.

bellum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, war.  
 bene, *adv.*, well.  
 benedico, xi, otum, (3), to bless.  
 benedictio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, benediction.  
 benedictus, *past part. of benedico*, blessed.  
 bibo, bibi, bibitum, (3), to drink.  
 bonus, a, um, *adj.*, good.  
 brevis, e, *adj.*, short, brief.

## C

cado, cecidi, cāsum, (3), to fall, fall down.  
 caedo, ceceidi, caesum, (3), to strike, kill.  
 calix, icis, n. (3) *m.*, a cup, chalice.  
 candidus, a, um, *adj.*, white.  
 canto, (1), to sing.  
 capio, cepi, captum, (3), to take, obtain.  
 caput, capitū, n. (3) *neut.*, a head.  
 caro, carnis, n. (3) *f.*, flesh.  
 castellum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a village, town.  
 castus, a, um, *adj.*, chaste.  
 Catholicus, a, um, *adj.*, Catholic.  
 causa, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a cause.  
 cēdo, cessi, cessum, (3), to give place.  
 centurio, ōnis, n. (3) *m.*, a centurion.  
 cernuus, a, um, *adj.*, bowing down.  
 Christiānus, a, um, *adj.*, Christian.  
 Christiānus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a Christian.  
 Christus, i, n. (2) *m.*, Christ, the Anointed.  
 circa, *prep. with acc.*, about, at, in respect of.  
 circueo, ii, itum, (4), to go about.  
 circumstantes, those present.  
 circumsto, steti, (1), to stand round.  
 cito, *adv.*, quickly.  
 civitas, ātis, n. (3) *f.*, a city.  
 clāmo, (1), to cry, cry out.  
 clāmor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, a cry.  
 claudio, si, sum, (3), to shut.  
 clausus, *past part. of claudio*, shut.  
 clāvis, is, n. (3) *f.*, a key.  
 clāvus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a nail.  
 coadūno, (1), to unite.  
 coelestis, e, *adj.*, heavenly.  
 coelum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, heaven (*pl. coeli*).

coena, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a supper.  
 coep̄erunt, 3rd pers. pl. of perf. of coepio, to begin.  
 cogitatio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, thought.  
 cogito, (1), to think.  
 cognatus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a kinsman.  
 cognosco, nōvi, nitum, (3), to know.  
 comedo, ēdi, ēsum, (3), to eat.  
 comitatus, us, n. (4) *m.*, a company.  
 communio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, communion.  
 compar, ris, *adj.*, equal.  
 competenter, *adv.*, fitly.  
 complaceo, (2), to please.  
 comprehendo, di, sum, (3), to comprehend, seize.  
 conceptus, a, um, conceived.  
 condemno, (1), to condemn.  
 condo, didi, ditum, (3), to lay up.  
 Confessor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, a Confessor.  
 confestim, *adv.*, forthwith.  
 confidentia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, confidence.  
 confiteor, confessus sum, (2), *v. dep.*, to confess, give praise.  
 conglorifico, (1), to conglorify.  
 congrego, (1), to gather together.  
 consolatrix, icis, n. (3) *f.*, a consoler.  
 conspectus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, sight.  
 constituo, ui, ūtum, (3), to set, place, establish, resolve.  
 consubstantialis, e, *adj.*, consubstantial.  
 consuetudo, inis, n. (3) *f.*, custom.  
 consummatio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, consummation.  
 consummo, (1), to consummate, fulfil.  
 contra, *prep. with acc.*, against, over against.  
 conturbo, (1), to disquiet.  
 conversor, (1), *v. dep.*, to dwell.  
 conversus, *past part. of converto*, turning.  
 converto, verti, versum, (3), to turn, bring back.  
 co-operatus, *past part. of co-operio*, to clothe.  
 copiosus, a, um, *adj.*, plenteous.  
 cor, cordis, n. (3) *neut.*, heart.  
 coram, *prep. with abl.*, in the presence of, before.

cornu, ūs, n. (4) *neut.*, a horn.  
 corona, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a crown.  
 corpus, oris, n. (3) *neut.*, a body.  
 cras, *adv.*, to-morrow.  
 creatus, *past part. of creo*, created.  
 credo, didi, ditum, (3), to believe, trust.  
 creo, (1), to create.  
 crimen, inis, n. (3) *neut.*, blame, guilt.  
 crucifigo, xi, xum, (3), to crucify.  
 crucifixus, *past part. of crucifigo*, crucified.  
 crux, crucis, n. (3) *f.*, a cross.  
 cuius, *genitive of qui or quis*, whose.  
 culpo, (1), to blame.  
 cūr, *adv.*, why?  
 cūra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, care.  
 curo, (1), to heal, care for.  
 custodia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a watch, guard, defence.  
 custodio, (4), to guard, keep, preserve, watch over.  
 custos, ōdis, n. (3) *m.*, a guard, guardian.

## D

daemonium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, an evil spirit, demon.  
 Davidicus, a, um, *adj.*, of David.  
 de, *prep. with abl.*, from, of, concerning, by.  
 debeo, (2), to owe.  
 debet, he ought.  
 debitor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, a debtor.  
 debitum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a debt, trespass.  
 defectus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, deficiency.  
 defendo, di, sum, (3), to defend.  
 defunctus, *past part. of defungor*, dead, departed.  
 deinde, *adv.*, then, thereupon.  
 deorsum, *adv.*, down.  
 deprecatio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, a prayer, entreaty.  
 derelictus, a, um, forsaken.  
 descendo, di, sum, (3), to descend.  
 despicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to despise, look down on.  
 Deus, i, n. (2) *m.*, God.  
 devotio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, devotion.  
 dextra, or dextra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a right hand.

diabolus, i, n. (2) m., the devil.  
 dic, *imperative of dico*.  
 dico, xi, ctum, (3), to say, tell, call, speak.  
 dies, ei, n. (5) m. and f., a day.  
 digitus, i, n. (2) m., a finger.  
 dignē, adv., worthily.  
 dignor, (1), v. dep., to vouchsafe.  
 dignus, a, um, adj., worthy (*followed by abl.*).  
 dilectio, ōnis, n. (3) f., love.  
 dilectus, *past part. of diligo*, beloved.  
 diligo, lexi, lectum, (3), to love.  
 dimitto, misi, missum, (3), to dismiss, forgive, release.  
 dirigo, rexi, rectum, (3), to direct.  
 dissensio, ōnis, n. (3) f., a dissension.  
 divido, visi, visum, (3), to divide.  
 divinus, a, um, adj., divine.  
 divitiæ, ārum, n. pl. (1) f., riches.  
 do, dedi, datum, (1), to give, grant, bestow.  
 doceo, docui, doctum, (2), to teach.  
 doctor, ōris, n. (3) m., a teacher, doctor.  
 documentum, i, n. (2) neut., teaching, ordinance.  
 doleo, (2), to grieve, sorrow.  
 dolor, ōris, n. (3) m., grief, sorrow.  
 domesticus, a, um, adj., belonging to a household.  
 dominus, i, n. (2) m., a lord.  
 domus, ūs, n. (4) f., a house, home.  
 donec, conj., until.  
 dono, (1), to grant.  
 donum, i, n. (2) neut., a gift, offering.  
 dormio, (4), to sleep.  
 dubito, (1), to hesitate, doubt.  
 duco, xi, ctum, (3), to lead.  
 dulcedo, dinis, n. (3) f., sweetness.  
 dulcis, e, adj., sweet.  
 dum, conj., while.  
 duo, ae, o, adj., two; *dative and abl.*, duobus, duābus, duobus.  
 duodecim, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

## E

eburneus, a, um, adj., of ivory.  
 ecce, *interjection*, behold! lo!  
 Ecclesia, ae, n. (1) f., the Church.

efficio, feci, factum, (3), to make.  
 ego, mei, *pers. pron.*, I.  
 eia, *interjection*, come, pray, ah!  
 ejicio, jeci, jectum, (3), to cast out.  
 eleison (*Greek verb*), have mercy on.  
 emitto, misi, missum, (3), to send forth.  
 emo, emi, emptum, (3), to buy.  
 enim, conj., for.  
 eo, ivi, itum, (4), to go.  
 epistola, ae, n. (1) f., a letter, epistle.  
 ergo, adv., therefore, then.  
 erigo, rexi, rectum, (3), to lift, raise up.  
 eripio, ripui, reptum, (3), to deliver, snatch away.  
 ero, *future of sum*, I shall be.  
 esse, *infinitive of sum*, to be.  
 esto, *imperative of sum*, be.  
 esurio, (4), to be hungry.  
 et, conj., and, also, even; et . . . et, both . . . and.  
 etiam, conj., also.  
 eum, acc. of is, him.  
 eundem, *gerund of eo*.  
 evangelium, i, n. (2) neut., gospel, good tidings.  
 ex, *prep. with abl.*, from, out of, beyond.  
 exalto, (1), to exalt, extol, lift up.  
 exāmen, inis, n. (3) neut., crisis, agony.  
 exaudio, (4), to hear graciously.  
 excelsus, a, um, adj., high, highest, most high.  
 excito, (1), to stir up, awake.  
 exeo, ii, itum, (4), to go forth, go out.  
 exercitus, us, n. (4) m., army, host.  
 exilium, i, n. (2) neut., exile.  
 existimo, (1), to think.  
 expavescō, pāvi, (3), to be affrighted.  
 exspecto, (1), to look for, wait for, expect.  
 exulto, (1), to exult, rejoice.  
 extendo, di, sum, (3), to stretch forth.  
 exul, ulis, n. (3) c., an exile.

## F

faber, ri, n. (2) m., a carpenter.  
 fābula, ae, n. (1) f., a story, tale, fable.  
 fac, *imperative of facio*.

facies, ōi, n. (5) *f.*, face.  
 facio, feci, factum, (3), to do, make, cause.  
 factor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, a maker.  
 factum est, it came to pass.  
 famulus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a servant.  
 fēlix, icis, *adj.*, happy.  
 fer, *imperative of fero*.  
 fero, tuli, lātum, ferre, to bear, take, bring.  
 festus, a, um, *adj.*, festive.  
 fēdēlis, e, *adj.*, faithful.  
 fides, ōi, n. (5) *f.*, faith.  
 fieri, *infinitive of fio*.  
 filia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a daughter.  
 filius, i, n. (2) *m.*, a son (*vocative, fili*).  
 finis, is, n. (3) *m.*, an end, border.  
 fio, factus sum, fieri, to be done, become, be, come to pass.  
 fixūra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a print.  
 flet, flēvi, flētum, (2), to weep.  
 flos, flōris, n. (3) *m.*, a flower.  
 fluctus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, a wave.  
 flūmen, inis, n. (3) *neut.*, a river, stream.  
 fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (3), to flow.  
 foedus, eris, n. (3) *neut.*, covenant.  
 fores, um, n. *pl.* (3) *f.*, doors.  
 forte, *adv.*, by chance, haply.  
 fortis, e, *adj.*, brave, strong.  
 fovea, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a ditch.  
 frango, frēgi, fractum, (3), to break.  
 frāter, tris, n. (3) *m.*, a brother.  
 fretum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, sea, strait, water.  
 frigidus, a, um, *adj.*, cold.  
 fructus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, fruit.  
 frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.  
 fugio, fūgi, fugitum, (3), to flee.  
 fūr, fūris, n. (3) *m.*, a thief.  
 fūror, (1), *v. dep.*, to steal.

## G

Gallaea, ae, n. (1) *f.*, Galilee.  
 gaudeo, gavisus sum, (2), *v. semi-dep.*, to rejoice.  
 gaudium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, joy, gladness.  
 gavisus sum, *perf. of gaudeo*, I rejoiced.  
 gemo, ul, itum, (3), to sigh.

genitor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, a father.  
 genitrix, icis, n. (3) *f.*, a mother.  
 genitus, a, um, begotten.  
 gens, gentis, n. (3) *f.*, a people, nation.  
 Gentes, the Gentiles.  
 genu, ūs, n. (4) *neut.*, a knee.  
 gladius, i, n. (2) *m.*, a sword.  
 glōria, ae, n. (1), glory.  
 glōrifico, (1), to glorify.  
 gradus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, a step.  
 grātia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, grace; grātiae, thanks; grātias agere, to give thanks.

## H

habeo, (2), to have.  
 habito, (1), to live, dwell, abide.  
 hērēditās, ātis, n. (3) *f.*, inheritance, heritage.  
 Hēva, ae, n. (1) *f.*, Eve.  
 hīc, haec, hōc, *demonstrative pron.*, this; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.  
 hīc, *adv.*, here.  
 hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.  
 homo, inis, n. (3) *m.*, a man, man.  
 honor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, honour.  
 honorābilis, e, *adj.*, honourable.  
 hōra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, an hour.  
 hostia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a victim, host.  
 hostilis, e, *adj.*, hostile.  
 humilis, e, *adj.*, humble.  
 hyssōpum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, hyssop.

## I

ibi, *adv.*, there.  
 idem, eadem, idem, *pron.*, the same.  
 iens, euntis, *pres. part. of eo*, going.  
 igitur, *adv.*, therefore.  
 ignis, is, n. (3) *m.*, fire.  
 ille, illa, illud, *demonstrative pron.*, that; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.  
 illūminātio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, light.  
 illūmino, (1), to enlighten, illumine.  
 immaculātus, a, um, *adj.*, immaculate.  
 immemor, oris, *adj.*, unmindful, forgetful.  
 immolo, (1), to sacrifice, offer.  
 impedio, (4), to impede, hinder.  
 impetus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, force, attack, power.  
 impius, a, um, *adj.*, impious, wicked.

implōro, (1), to implore.  
 in, *prep. with acc.*, into, on to, upon, unto, for; *prep. with abl.*, in, within, among, on.  
 incarnātiō, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, incarnation.  
 incensum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, incense.  
 incipio, cōpi, ceptum, (3), to begin.  
 inolino, (1), to incline.  
 inorēdulus, a, um, *adj.*, faithless.  
 inde, *adv.*, thence, from there, then, thereupon.  
 indignus, a, um, *adj.*, unworthy (*followed by abl.*).  
 inco, ii, itum, (4), to enter.  
 infēlix, hōis, *adj.*, unhappy.  
 inferi, ōrum, n. *pl.* (2) *m.*, hell.  
 infero, intuli, illātum, inferre, to put in.  
 inferre, *infinitive of infero*, to put in.  
 infirmitas, ātis, n. (3) *f.*, sickness.  
 infirmus, a, um, *adj.*, sick, infirm.  
 infundo, fūdi, fūsum, (3), to pour in, infuse.  
 inimicus, a, um, *adj.*, hostile, unfriendly.  
 inimicus, i, n. (2) *m.*, an enemy.  
 iniquitas, ātis, n. (3) *f.*, iniquity.  
 iniquus, a, um, *adj.*, unjust, wicked.  
 initium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a beginning.  
 injūria, ae, n. (1) *f.*, an injury.  
 innumerābilis, e, *adj.*, innumerable, countless.  
 insignis, e, *adj.*, singular, eminent.  
 insufflo, (1), to breathe upon.  
 intemerātus, a, um, *adj.*, undefiled.  
 intendens, *pres. part. of intendo*, attentive.  
 intercedo, cessi, cessum, (3), to intercede.  
 interficio, fīci, fectum, (3), to kill, slay, put to death.  
 intra, *prep. with acc.*, within.  
 intro, (1), to enter, go into.  
 introeo, ii, itum, (4), to enter, go in.  
 intueor, tuitus sum, (2), *v. dep.*, to see, gaze at, behold.  
 intus, *adv.*, within.  
 invenio, vēni, ventum, (4), to find.  
 invicem, *adv.*, in turn, among one another, one another.

inviolātus, a, um, *adj.*, inviolate.  
 ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *definitive pron.*, self; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.  
 ira, ae, n. (1) *f.*, anger.  
 iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative pron.*, that, this; *personal pron.*, he, she, it.  
 itaque, *conj.*, therefore, and so, accordingly.  
 iterum, *adv.*, again.

## J

jaceo, (2), to lie.  
 Jacōbus, i, n. (2) *m.*, James.  
 jam, *adv.*, now, already.  
 jānuā, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a gate, door.  
 jejūno, (1), to fast.  
 Jerūsalem, n. *indeclinable*, Jerusalem.  
 Jēsus, ū, n. *m.*, Jesus.  
 Johannes, is, n. (3) *m.*, John.  
 jubeo, jussi, jussum, (2), to order, bid, command.  
 jubilātiō, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, jubilation.  
 Jūdaeus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a Jew.  
 Jūdas, ae, n. (1) *m.*, Judas.  
 jūdicium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, judgment.  
 jūdico, (1), to judge.  
 jūro, (1), to swear.  
 jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, n. (3 and 2) *neut.*, an oath.  
 justitia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, justice.  
 justus, a, um, *adj.*, just.  
 juvenis, is, n. (3) *m.*, a young man.  
 juvenus, tūtis, n. (3) *f.*, youth.  
 juxtā, *prep. with acc.*, nigh.

## K

Kyrie (*Greek noun*), O Lord.

## L

labium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a lip.  
 labor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, work, labour.  
 labōro, (1), to work, labour.  
 lacryma, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a tear.  
 laetifico, (1), to make glad.  
 laetitia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, joy, gladness.  
 laetor, (1), *v. dep.*, to rejoice, be glad.  
 laetus, a, um, *adj.*, glad, joyful.  
 lapis, idis, n. (3) *m.*, a stone.

lātus, a, um, *adj.*, wide, broad.  
 latus, eris, n. (3) *neut.*, a side.  
 laudātio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, praise.  
 laudo, (1), to praise.  
 laus, laudis, n. (3) *f.*, praise.  
 lavo, lāvi, lautum or lōtum, (1), to wash.  
 lectus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a bed, couch.  
 lego, lēgi, lectum, (3), to read, pick, choose.  
 lepra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, leprosy.  
 leprōsus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a leper.  
 levo, (1), to lift up.  
 lex, lēgis, n. (3) *f.*, a law.  
 liber, bri, n. (2) *m.*, a book.  
 libero, (1), to deliver, set free.  
 licet, *v. impersonal*, (2), it is permitted.  
 ligo, (1), to bind.  
 lingua, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a tongue.  
 locus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a place.  
 longitūdo, dinis, n. (3) *f.*, length.  
 longus, a, um, *adj.*, long.  
 loquor, locūtus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to speak, declare.  
 luceo, luxi, (2), to shine.  
 lūcidus, a, um, *adj.*, bright.  
 lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, (3), to play.  
 lūmen, inis, n. (3) *neut.*, light.  
 lux, lūcis, n. (3) *f.*, light; primā luce, at dawn.

## M

magister, ri, n. (2) *m.*, a master.  
 magnus, a, um, *adj.*, great.  
 magus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a wise man.  
 māior, māius, *adj. comp. of magnus*, greater.  
 male, *adv.*, ill, evilly, badly.  
 maledictus, a, um, *adj.*, cursed.  
 malefactor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, a malefactor.  
 malum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, evil.  
 malus, a, um, *adj.*, bad, evil, wicked.  
 mandātum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a commandment.  
 mando, (1), to command, charge.  
 mandūco, (1), to eat.  
 māne, *adv.*, in the morning.  
 maneo, mansi, mansum, (2), to remain, abide.  
 manus, ūs, n. (4) *f.*, a hand.  
 mare, is, n. (3) *neut.*, the sea.

Maria, ae, n. (1) *f.*, Mary.  
 martyr, yris, n. (3) *c.*, a martyr.  
 māter, tris, n. (3) *f.*, a mother.  
 mātūtīnus, a, um, *adj.*, morning.  
 mē, *acc. of ego*, me.  
 medius, a, um, *adj.*, middle, in the midst of.  
 memor, oris, *adj.*, mindful.  
 memoria, ae, n. (1) *f.*, memory, remembrance, a memorial.  
 memoror, (1), *v. dep.*, to remember, be mindful.  
 mens, mentis, n. (3) *f.*, mind, soul.  
 mercēs, oēdis, n. (3) *f.*, a reward, recompense.  
 metus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, fear.  
 meus, a, um, *possessive adj.*, my, mine.  
 mihi, *dative of ego*, to me.  
 miles, itis, n. (3) *m.*, a soldier.  
 minister, tri, n. (2) *m.*, a servant.  
 ministro, (1), to minister.  
 miser, era, erum, *adj.*, miserable, wretched.  
 misereor, sertus sum, (2), *v. dep.*, to have mercy, to pity (*followed by genitive or dative*).  
 misericordia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, mercy, pity.  
 misericors, dis, *adj.*, merciful.  
 mitis, e, *adj.*, gentle.  
 mitto, misi, missum, (3), to send, cast, put.  
 modo, *adv.*, now, only.  
 moneo, (2), to advise, warn.  
 mons, tis, n. (3) *m.*, a mountain, hill.  
 monstro, (1), to show, point out.  
 monumentum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a tomb, sepulchre, grave.  
 morior, mortuus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to die.  
 mors, tis, n. (3) *f.*, death.  
 mortuus, a, um, *adj.*, dead.  
 Moyses, is, n. (3) *m.*, Moses.  
 mulier, eris, n. (3) *f.*, a woman.  
 multus, a, um, *adj.*, much, many.  
 mundo, (1), to cleanse, make clean.  
 mundus, a, um, *adj.*, clean, pure.  
 mundus, i, n. (2) *m.*, world, universe, mankind.  
 mūnus, eris, n. (3) *neut.*, a gift, present.

## N

**narro**, (1), to narrate, tell.  
**nascor, nātus sum**, (3), *v. dep.*, to be born.  
**nātio, ōnis, n.** (3) *f.*, a nation.  
**nātus, a, um, past part. of nascor**, born.  
**nāvis, is, n.** (3) *f.*, a ship.  
**Nazarēnus, a, um, adj.**, of Nazareth, Nazarene.  
**nē, conj.**, lest, that not (*followed by subjunctive*).  
**nec, conj.**, and not, neither, nor.  
**negligentia, ae, n.** (1) *f.*, a failing.  
**nēmo, inis, n.** (3) *c.*, no one, nobody, no man.  
**neque, conj.** (*same as nec*), neither, nor, and not.  
**nescio**, (4), to know not.  
**nihil, n., indeclinable**, nothing, naught.  
**nihilum, i, n.** (2) *neut.*, nothing, naught.  
**nimis, adv.**, exceedingly, too much.  
**nisi, conj.**, unless, if not, except.  
**nix, nivis, n.** (3) *f.*, snow.  
**nōbis, dative and abl. of nos**, to us, etc.  
**nocte, abl. of nox**, by night.  
**nōli, imperative of nōlo**, do not.  
**nōlo, nolui, nolle**, to be unwilling.  
**nōmen, inis, n.** (3) *neut.*, a name.  
**nondum, adv.**, not yet.  
**nonne, interrogative adv.**, whether not? not? (*indicating that the answer "yes" is expected*).  
**nōs, pers. pron.**, we.  
**nosco, nōvi, nōtum**, (3), to get to know, know.  
**nostr, tra, trum, possessive adj.**, our, ours.  
**nōti, ōrum, n. pl.** (2) *m.*, acquaintances.  
**nōvi, perf. of nosco (used with pres. meaning)**, I know.  
**nox, ctis, n.** (3) *f.*, night.  
**nūbes, is, n.** (3) *f.*, cloud.  
**num, interrogative adv.**, whether? surely not? (*indicating that the answer "no" is expected*).  
**numquid, interrogative adv.**, whether? surely not? (*indicating that the answer "no" is expected*).

**nunc, adv.**, now.  
**nuntio**, (1), to announce.  
**nuntius, i, n.** (2) *m.*, a messenger.  
**nurus, us, n.** (4) *f.*, a daughter-in-law.

## O

**ob, prep. with acc.**, through, on account of.  
**oblātio, ōnis, n.** (3) *f.*, an oblation, offering.  
**obseruo**, (1), to mark, observe.  
**obstupesco, stupui**, (3), to be amazed.  
**obumbro**, (1), to overshadow.  
**obviam, adv.**, in the way.  
**obviam esse**, to meet.  
**obviam ire**, to go to meet.  
**obviam venire**, to come to meet.  
**occido, cidi, cisum**, (3), to kill.  
**occurro, curri, cursum**, (3), to meet, go to meet.  
**octo, adj. indeclinable**, eight.  
**oculus, i, n.** (2) *m.*, an eye.  
**ōdērunt, 3rd pers. pl. of ōdi**, they hate.  
**ōdi, ōdisse, v. defective**, to hate (*only used in the perf. tense*).  
**offendo, di, sum**, (3), to dash, stumble.  
**offensio, ōnis, n.** (3) *f.*,  
**offero, obtuli, oblātum, offerre**, to offer.  
**omnipotens, ntis, adj.**, omnipotent, almighty.  
**omnis, e, adj.**, all, every.  
**oportet, uit**, (2), *v. impersonal*, it behoves; must, ought.  
**optimus, a, um, adj. superl. of bonus**, best.  
**opus, eris, n.** (3) *neut.*, work.  
**ōrātio, ōnis, n.** (3) *f.*, prayer.  
**oriens, tis, n.** (3) *m.*, the Orient, east.  
**orior, ortus sum**, (4), *v. dep.*, to rise, arise.  
**orno**, (1), to adorn, deck.  
**oro**, (1), to pray, entreat.  
**ortus, a, um, past part. of orior**, risen.  
**os, ōris, n.** (3) *neut.*, a mouth, face.  
**ostendo, di, sum**, (3), to show.  
**ostium, i, n.** (2) *neut.*, a gate, door.  
**ōtiōsus, a, um, adj.**, idle.

**ōtium**, i, n. (2) *neut.*, leisure, idleness.

**ovis**, is, n. (3) *f.*, a sheep.

## P

**pācifico**, (1), to make peaceful, pacify.

**pando**, **pandi**, **pansum**, (3), to open.

**pānis**, is, n. (3) *m.*, bread; *pl.* loaves.

**parābola**, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a parable.

**paralyticus**, i, n. (2) *m.*, a paralytic, a paralysed man.

**paro**, (1), to prepare, provide.

**pars**, **partis**, n. (3) *f.*, part, quarter.

**parvus**, a, um, *adj.*, little, small.

**passio**, **ōnis**, n. (3) *f.*, passion.

**passus**, a, um, *past part.* of **patior**, having suffered.

**pastor**, **ōris**, n. (3) *m.*, a shepherd, pastor.

**pater**, **ris**, n. (3) *m.*, a father.

**paterfamilias**, **patrisfamilias**, n. (3) *m.*, the goodman of the house.

**patior**, **passus sum**, (3), to suffer, endure.

**patria**, ae, n. (1) *f.*, native land.

**patriarcha**, ae, n. (1) *m.*, patriarch.

**Paulus**, i, n. (2) *m.*, Paul.

**pauper**, **eris**, *adj.*, poor.

**pax**, **pācis**, n. (3) *f.*, peace.

**peccātor**, **ōris**, n. (3) *c.*, a sinner.

**peccātum**, i, n. (2) *neut.*, sin.

**pecco**, (1), to sin.

**pecūnia**, ae, n. (1) *f.*, money.

**pendeo**, **pendi**, **pensum**, (2), to hang (*intransitive*).

**per**, *prep.* with *acc.*, through, by, across.

**perdo**, **didi**, **ditum**, (3), to lose, destroy.

**perduco**, **duxi**, **ductum**, (3), to bring.

**perfidio**, **fididi**, **fossum**, (3), to break open.

**perforo**, (1), to pierce.

**pergo**, **perrexi**, **perrectum**, (3), to go, proceed.

**perhibeo**, (2), to render, bear.

**periculum**, i, n. (2) *neut.*, danger, peril.

**peto**, **ivi**, **itum**, (3), to seek, ask.

**petra**, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a rock, stone.

**Petrus**, i, n. (2) *m.*, Peter.

**phantasma**, **atis**, n. (3) *neut.*, a phantasm.

**Phariseus**, i, n. (2) *m.*, a Pharisee.

**Pilātus**, i, n. (2) *m.*, Pilate.

**pinnāculum**, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a pinnacle.

**piscis**, is, n. (3) *m.*, a fish.

**pius**, a, um, *adj.*, good, pious, tender, loving.

**placeo**, (2), to please.

**plebs**, **plēbis**, n. (3) *f.*, people.

**plēnus**, a, um, *adj.*, full (*followed by abl.*).

**pōno**, **posui**, **positum**, (3), to put, place, set, lay down.

**pontifex**, **ficis**, n. (3) *m.*, High Priest.

**populus**, i, n. (2) *m.*, people.

**porta**, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a gate, door.

**porto**, (1), to carry.

**possideo**, **sēdi**, **sessum**, (2), to possess.

**possum**, **potui**, **posse**, to be able, can.

**post**, *prep.* with *acc.*, after, behind.

**postea**, *adv.*, afterwards.

**potens**, **tis**, *adj.*, powerful.

**potestas**, **ātis**, n. (3) *f.*, power, dominion.

**potius**, *comp. adv.*, rather, preferably.

**pōto**, **potāvi**, **potātum** and **pōtum**, (1), to drink.

**pōtum**, *supine* of **pōto**, to drink.

**prae**, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, for.

**praecedo**, **cessi**, **cessum**, (3), to go before, precede.

**praecipio**, **cēpi**, **ceptum**, (3), to command, enjoin.

**praecipuū**, *adv.*, especially.

**praedicandus**, a, um, to be extolled.

**praedico**, (1), to preach, extol.

**praeco**, **ii**, **itum**, (4), to go in advance.

**praegustātus**, a, um, tasted beforehand.

**praeparo**, (1), to prepare.

**praesidium**, i, n. (2) *neut.*, protection.

**praesto**, **stiti**, **stitum**, (1), to give, bestow, offer.

**praevaleo**, (2), to prevail.

**precor**, (1), *v. dep.*, to pray.

**primus**, a, um, *adj.*, first.

**principium**, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a beginning.

**prius, adv.**, before.  
**pro, prep. with abl.**, for, for the sake of, according to, on behalf of.  
**prōcedo, cessi, cessum, (3)**, to proceed, come forth.  
**prōcido, cidi, (3)**, to fall down.  
**prōficilo, fīci, fectum, (3)**, to assist, help, profit, advance.  
**profundum, i, n. (2) neut.**, depth.  
**promissio, ōnis, n. (3) f.**, a promise.  
**prophēta, ae, n. (1) m.**, a prophet.  
**prophēta, (1)**, to prophesy.  
**propitiatio, ōnis, n. (3) f.**, propitiation.  
**propositio, ōnis, n. (3) f.**, proposition, show.  
**proprius, a, um, adj.**, his, her, or their own, belonging to.  
**propter, prep. with acc.**, on account of, through.  
**propterea, adv.**, therefore.  
**prōtego, texi, tectum, (3)**, to protect.  
**proximus, i, n. (2) m.**, a neighbour.  
**prūdēns, tis, adj.**, prudent.  
**prūdētia, ae, n. (1) f.**, prudence, wisdom.  
**psalmus, i, n. (2) m.**, a psalm.  
**puer, eri, n. (2) m.**, a boy, child, servant.  
**pugno, (1)**, to fight.  
**pulcher, chra, chrum, adj.**, fair, beautiful.  
**pulso, (1)**, to knock.  
**pūnio, (4)**, to punish.  
**pūpilla, ae, n. (1) f.**, pupil of the eye, apple of the eye.  
**pūrus, a, um, adj.**, pure.  
**puto, (1)**, to think.

## Q

**quadrāginta, indeclinable adj.**, forty.  
**quaero, quaesivi, sītum, (3)**, to seek, ask, inquire.  
**quaesumus, we beseech, entreat.**  
**quālis, e, adj.**, such as, as, what manner of.  
**quam, adv.**, how, than.  
**quando, adv.**, when.  
**quārē, adv.**, why? wherefore?  
**quasi, adv.**, as if, as, as it were.  
**-que, conj.**, *enclitic*, and.

**quem, acc. of qui, whom.**  
**qui, quae, quod, relative pron.**, who, which, that.  
**quia, conj.**, that, for, because.  
**quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, relative pron.**, whosoever, whatsoever.  
**quid, adverbial pron.**, why? *neut. of quis*, what?  
**quidam, quaedam, quoddam, indefinite pron.**, some, certain, a certain man.  
**quinque, indeclinable adj.**, five.  
**quintus, a, um, adj.**, fifth.  
**quippe, adv. and conj.**, for, in fact.  
**quis, quid, interrogative pron.**, who? which? what? *indefinite pron.* (after *si, nisi, num, ne*), any, anyone.  
**quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, pron.**, anyone.  
**quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quicquid), indefinite relative pron.**, whoever, whichever, whatever.  
**quō, adv.**, whither?  
**quod, conj.**, that, because.  
**quodcunque, neut. of quicunque, whatsoever.**  
**quōmodo, adv.**, how? in what manner?  
**quoniam, conj.**, that, for, since.  
**quot, adv.**, how many?  
**quotidiānus, a, um, adj.**, daily.  
**quotquot, indeclinable adj.**, as many as.

## R

**recēdo, cessi, cessum, (3)**, to depart, withdraw.  
**recipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3)**, receive, take.  
**recumbo, cubui, (3)**, to recline (at table).  
**redemptio, ōnis, n. (3) f.**, redemption.  
**redemptor, ōris, n. (3) m.**, a redeemer.  
**redeo, ii, itum, (4)**, to go back, return.  
**refugium, i, n. (2) neut.**, refuge.  
**rēgina, ae, n. (1) f.**, a queen.  
**regio, ōnis, n. (3) f.**, a region, land.  
**regno, (1)**, to reign.

regnum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a kingdom, realm.  
 rego, rexi, rectum, (3), to rule, govern, direct.  
 regresior, regressus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to return, go back.  
 relinquo, liqui, licum, (3), to leave, abandon.  
 remissio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, remission, forgiveness.  
 remitto, misi, missum, (3), to send back, remit, forgive.  
 repleo, plēvi, plētum, (3), to fill.  
 requies, ōtis, n. (3) *f.*, rest, repose.  
 requiesco, quievi, ōtum, (3), to rest, repose.  
 requiro, quisi, situm, (3), to seek.  
 res, rei, n. (5) *f.*, a thing, matter, business.  
 resisto, stitī, (3), to resist (*followed by dative*).  
 respicio, pexi, pectum, (3), to regard, look upon, look.  
 resplendeo, (2), to shine.  
 respondeo, di, sum, (2), to answer.  
 responsum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, an answer.  
 resurgo, surrexi, surrectum, (3), to rise again.  
 resurrectio, ōnis, n. (3) *f.*, resurrection.  
 retineo, tinuei, tentum, (2), to retain, keep.  
 revēlo, (1), to reveal.  
 revolvūtus, a, um, *past part. of* revolve, rolled back.  
 revolveo, vi, vultum, (3), to roll back.  
 rex, rēgis, n. (3) *m.*, a king.  
 ritus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, a rite.  
 rōbur, ōris, n. (3) *neut.*, strength.  
 rosa, ae, n. (1) *f.*, a rose.  
 rursum, *adv.*, again.

## S

sabbata, ōrum, n. *pl.* (2) *neut.*, a week.  
 sabbatum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, the sabbath day, Saturday.  
 sacerdos, dōtis, n. (3) *m.*, a priest.  
 sacrificium, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a sacrifice.

saeculum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, an age, eternity; a saeculo, from all time; in saecula, for ever, unto ages.  
 saepe, *adv.*, often.  
 salio, salui, saltum, (4), to leap, bound, spring.  
 salus, ūtis, n. (3) *f.*, salvation, health.  
 salvāre, is, n. (3) *neut.*, salvation.  
 salūto, (1), to greet, salute.  
 salvātor, ōris, n. (3) *m.*, saviour.  
 salvē, welcome! hail!  
 salvus, a, um, *adj.*, safe, whole, saved.  
 Samaritānus, a, um, *adj.*, Samaritan.  
 sanctus, a, um, *adj.*, holy, saintly.  
 sanctus, i, n. (2) *m.*, a saint.  
 sanguis, inis, n. (3) *m.*, blood.  
 sāno, (1), to heal.  
 sapiens, tis, *adj.*, wise.  
 sapientia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, wisdom.  
 sata, ōrum, n. *pl.* (2) *neut.*, fields, cornfields.  
 scabellum, i, n. (2) *neut.*, a foot-stool.  
 scientia, ae, n. (1) *f.*, knowledge.  
 solo, (4), to know.  
 scitōte, know ye.  
 scriba, ae, n. (1) *m.*, a scribe.  
 scribo, scripsi, scriptum, (3), to write.  
 scriptūra, ae, n. (1) *f.*, scripture.  
 scēcum, with himself.  
 secundum, *prep. with acc.*, according to, after.  
 secundus, a, um, *adj.*, second.  
 sed, *conj.*, but.  
 sedeo, sēdi, sessum, (2), to sit, rest.  
 sēdes, is, n. (3) *f.*, a seat, throne, place.  
 sēmen, inis, n. (3) *neut.*, seed.  
 sēmētīpsum, *reflexive pron. acc. 3rd pers. m.*, himself.  
 semper, *adv.*, always.  
 sempiternus, a, um, eternal, everlasting.  
 sensus, ūs, n. (4) *m.*, sense.  
 sentio, sensi, sensum, (4), to feel, think.  
 seorsum, *adv.*, apart.  
 sēparo, (1), to separate.  
 sepelio, livi, pultum, (4), to bury.  
 sepultus, a, um, *past part. of* sepelio, buried.

sequor, secutus sum, (3), *v. dep.*, to follow.  
 sermo, ōnis, *n.* (3) *m.*, a speech, word.  
 sēro, *adv.*, too late, late.  
 servio, (4), to serve (*followed by dative*).  
 servo, (1), to save, preserve, observe, keep.  
 servus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, a slave, servant.  
 sex, *indeclinable adj.*, six.  
 si, *conj.*, if.  
 si quis, if anyone.  
 sic, *adv.*, so.  
 sicut, *adv.*, as, as also, how.  
 signo, (1), to sign.  
 signum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a sign, miracle.  
 similis, *e*, *adj.*, like (*followed by genitive or dative*).  
 simul, *adv.*, together, at the same time.  
 sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.  
 sino, sivi, situm, (3), to suffer, allow, permit.  
 socrus, *us*, *n.* (4) *f.*, a mother-in-law.  
 sōl, *is*, *n.* (3) *m.*, the sun.  
 solum, *adv.*, only, alone.  
 sōlus, *a, um, adj.*, alone.  
 solutus, *a, um, past part. of solvo*, freed, loosed.  
 solvo, vi, lūtus, (3), to loose, set free, dissolve.  
 somnium, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a dream.  
 somnus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, sleep; *pl.* dreams.  
 sonus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, a sound.  
 soror, ōris, *n.* (3) *f.*, a sister.  
 speculum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a mirror.  
 sp̄ro, (1), to hope, hope for.  
 sp̄s, ōi, *n.* (5) *f.*, hope.  
 spica, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, an ear of corn.  
 spina, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a thorn.  
 spiritalis, *e, adj.*, spiritual.  
 spiritus, ūs, *n.* (4) *m.*, breath, spirit, wind; Sanctus Spiritus, the Holy Ghost.  
 statim, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.  
 statuo, ui, ūtum, (3), to set, place.  
 stella, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a star.  
 sto, steti, statum, (1), to stand.  
 stola, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a robe.

stupefactus, *a, um, adj.*, astonished, amazed.  
 stupeo, (2), to be astounded, astonished.  
 stupor, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, astonishment.  
 sub, *prep. with acc.*, to; *prep. with abl.*, under.  
 subditus, *past part. of subdo*, subject, subjected.  
 subdo, didi, ditum, (3), to subdue, subject.  
 suffrāgium, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, prayer.  
 summitto, misi, missum, (3), to let down.  
 super, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, upon, above, over, for, because of, at, besides, beyond.  
 supero, (1), to overcome, conquer.  
 supplementum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, supply.  
 supplex, icis, *adj.*, suppliant.  
 supplex, icis, *n.* (3) *c.*, a suppliant.  
 supra, *prep. with acc.*, over, above.  
 surgo, surrexi, surrectum, (3), to rise.  
 suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, (3), receive, take, undertake, protect.  
 suscito, (1), to raise up.  
 suspiro, (1), to sigh.  
 suus, *a, um, possessive adj.*, his, his own, her, its, their.

## T

tabernāculum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a tabernacle, dwelling.  
 tamen, *adv.*, yet, nevertheless, but, however.  
 tango, tetigi, tactum, (3), to touch.  
 tantum, *adv.*, only.  
 tantus, *a, um, adj.*, so great, so much.  
 tē, *acc. of tū*, thee.  
 tectum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a roof, dwelling.  
 tēcum, with thee.  
 tēgula, *ae*, *n.* (1) *f.*, a tile.  
 templum, *i*, *n.* (2) *neut.*, a temple.  
 tempus, ōris, *n.* (3) *neut.*, time.  
 tenebrae, ārum, *n. pl.* (1) *f.*, darkness.  
 teneo, ui, tentum, (2), to hold, keep.  
 tentatio, ōnis, *n.* (3) *f.*, temptation.  
 tentator, ōris, *n.* (3) *m.*, a tempter.  
 tento, (1), to tempt.  
 terminus, *i*, *n.* (2) *m.*, end.

terra, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, earth, land.  
 terreo, (2), to terrify, frighten.  
 tertius, *a, um, adj.*, third.  
 testāmentum, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, a testa-  
 ment, covenant.  
 testimōnium, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, testi-  
 mony, witness.  
 tetigi, *perf. of tango*, I touched.  
 thronus, *i, n.* (2) *m.*, a throne.  
 tibi, *dative of tū*, to thee.  
 timeo, (2), to fear, be afraid.  
 tollo, *sustulī, sublātum*, (3), to lift,  
 raise, take away.  
 tōtus, *a, um, adj.*, whole, all (*genitive*  
 tōtus, *dative tōtī*).  
 trādo, *didī, ditum*, (3), to deliver,  
 betray.  
 traho, *traxi, tractum*, (3), to draw.  
 trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.  
 transeo, *ī, itum*, (4), to pass, cross  
 over.  
 transfigūro, (1), to transfigure.  
 trēs, tria, *adj.*, three.  
 triūm, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, a space of  
 three days.  
 trinus, *a, um, adj.*, trine, threefold.  
 tristis, *e, adj.*, sad.  
 tū, *tui, personal pron.*, thou.  
 tunc, *adv.*, then.  
 turba, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, a crowd, multi-  
 tude, company.  
 turbo, (1), to trouble.  
 turris, *is, n.* (3) *f.*, a tower.  
 tuis, *a, um, possessive adj.*, thy,  
 thine.

## U

ubi, *adv.*, where.  
 ullus, *a, um, adj.*, any (*genitive*  
 ullius, *dative ullī*).  
 umbra, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, shade, shadow.  
 unde, *adv.*, whence, from where.  
 undecim, *indeclinable adj.*, eleven.  
 ungo, *unxi, unctum*, (3), to anoint.  
 ūnicus, *a, um, adj.*, sole, only, sole-  
 begotten.  
 ūnigenitus, *a, um, adj.*, only-be-  
 gotten.  
 ūnitas, *ātis, n.* (3) *f.*, unity.  
 ūniversus, *a, um, adj.*, all, whole.  
 ūnus, *a, um, adj.*, one, same (*genitive*  
 ūnius, *dative ūnī*).  
 unusquisque, *adj.*, each.

usque, *adv.*, on, right on, continually,  
 even, henceforward.  
 ut, *conj. with indicative*, when, as.  
 ut, *conj. with subjunctive*, that, so  
 that, in order that.  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*,  
 both.  
 utique, *adv.*, verily, certainly.

## V

vādo, *si, (3)*, to go.  
 valdē, *adv.*, very, exceedingly.  
 vallis, *is, n.* (3) *f.*, a valley.  
 vānum, in vain.  
 vānus, *a, um, adj.*, vain.  
 varius, *a, um, adj.*, divers, various,  
 manifold.  
 vās, vāsīs, *n.* (3) *neut.*, a vessel.  
 vello, *vulsi and velli, vulsum*, (3),  
 to pluck, pull.  
 vēlox, *ōcis, adj.*, swift.  
 veneror, (1), *v. dep.*, venerate,  
 worship.  
 venio, *vēni, ventum*, (3), to come.  
 venter, *ris, n.* (3) *m.*, womb, body.  
 verbum, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, a word.  
 vērē, *adv.*, truly, in truth.  
 vēritas, *ātis, n.* (3) *f.*, truth.  
 vērō, *conj.*, but.  
 vērus, *a, um, adj.*, true.  
 vester, *tra, trum, possessive adj.*,  
 your, yours.  
 vestimentum, *i, n.* (2) *neut.*, raiment,  
 clothes.  
 vexo, (1), to trouble, vex.  
 via, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, way, journey,  
 road.  
 video, *vidi, visum*, (2), to see, look.  
 videor, *visus sum*, (2) (*passive of*  
 video), to seem, appear.  
 vigilia, *ae, n.* (1) *f.*, a watch; *pl.*,  
 the night watches.  
 vigilo, (1), to watch.  
 vinco, *vici, victum*, (3), to conquer,  
 overcome.  
 violō, (1), to break, violate.  
 vir, *i, n.* (2) *m.*, a man.  
 virgo, *ginis, n.* (3) *f.*, a virgin.  
 virtus, *ūtis, n.* (3) *f.*, virtue, strength,  
 courage.  
 virtūtes, *um, n. pl. (of virtus) f.*,  
 miracles.

**vis**, *2nd pers. sing. of volo*, thou dost wish.

**viscera**, *um, n. pl. (3) neut.*, bowels, heart.

**visibilis**, *e, adj.*, visible.

**visio**, *ōnis, n. (3) f.*, a vision.

**visite**, *(1)*, to visit.

**vita**, *ae, n. (1) f.*, life.

**vivifico**, *(1)*, to quicken, give life to.

**vivo**, *vixi, victum, (3)*, to live.

**vivus**, *a, um, adj.*, living, alive.

**voce**, *(1)*, to call, summon.

**volo**, *volui, velle*, to be willing, to wish.

**volo**, *(1)*, to fly.

**voluntas**, *ātis, n. (3) f.*, will.

**vōs**, *vestri, personal pron.*, you.

**vox**, *vōcis, n. (3) f.*, voice.

**vulnus**, *eris, n. (3) neut.*, a wound.

**vult**, *3rd pers. sing. of volo*, he wishes.

**vultis**, *2nd pers. pl. of volo*, you wish.

# INDEX

	PAGES		PAGES
<b>Ablative :</b>		<b>Genitive, use of</b>	10, 113
Absolute	72, 119	<b>Gerund</b>	81, 83, 98, 121
Comparison	50, 114	<b>Gerundive</b>	82, 83, 102, 121
Time	80, 114, 120	<b>Imperative Mood :</b>	
Use of	11, 114	Active	26, 98
<b>Accusative :</b>		Passive	64, 102
And Infinitive	78, 115	<b>Imperfect Tense :</b>	
Time	80, 113, 120	Indicative Active	28
Use of	113	Indicative Passive	48
<b>Adjectives :</b>		Subjunctive Active	70
Comparison	50, 91	Subjunctive Passive	75
2nd Declension	13, 17, 19, 89	<b>Indirect Command</b>	116
3rd Declension	36, 37, 90	<b>Indirect Question</b>	75, 116
<b>Clauses :</b>		<b>Indirect Statement</b>	77, 115
Adjectival	116	<b>Infinitive Mood :</b>	
Adverbial	116	Active	14, 77, 98
Causal	117	Passive	64, 77, 102
Concessive	118	<b>Ipe</b>	69, 93
Conditional	74, 118	<b>Jussive Subjunctive</b>	68
Consecutive	117	<b>Malo</b>	103
Final	117	<b>Noli with Infinitive</b>	62, 121
Noun	115	<b>Nolo</b>	103
Temporal	116	<b>Noun Clauses</b>	115
<b>Cum following case</b>	29	<b>Numerals</b>	94, 95
<b>Dative, use of</b>	10, 113	<b>Optative Subjunctive</b>	68
<b>Deponent Verbs</b>	62	<b>Participles :</b>	
<b>Et</b>	66, 103	Future	59, 60, 98
<b>Ese</b>	13, 27, 28, 99	Past	52, 102
<b>Fero</b>	103	Present	59, 98
<b>Fio</b>	103	<b>Perfect Tense :</b>	
<b>Future Tense :</b>		Indicative Active	41, 42, 43, 44
Active	26, 27	Indicative Passive	52
Passive	49	Subjunctive Active	75
<b>Future-Perfect Tense :</b>		Subjunctive Passive	76
Active	42, 43, 44		
Passive	53		
<b>Gender of Nouns</b>	16		

	PAGES		PAGES
<b>Pluperfect :</b>		<b>Questions :</b>	
Indicative Active	41, 42, 43, 44	Direct - - -	79, 119
Indicative Passive - -	53	Indirect - - -	75, 116
Subjunctive Active - -	73	<b>Semi-Deponent Verbs - -</b>	<b>64</b>
Subjunctive Passive - -	74	<b>Sequence of Tenses - -</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>Possum - - -</b>	<b>14, 103</b>	<b>Supines - - -</b>	<b>84, 122</b>
<b>Present Tense :</b>		<b>Time - - -</b>	<b>80, 81, 120</b>
Indicative Active	8, 12, 13, 23, 24	<b>Verbs :</b>	
Indicative Passive - -	46, 47	In -io - - -	60, 61
Subjunctive Active - -	68	Irregular - -	45, 46, 54, 103, 106
Subjunctive Passive - -	68	<b>Volo - - -</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>Prepositions - -</b>	<b>21, 104, 105</b>	<b>Wishes - - -</b>	<b>120</b>
<b>Prohibitions - -</b>	<b>62, 76, 121</b>		
<b>Pronouns :</b>			
Demonstrative - -	57, 58, 93		
Personal - -	55, 56, 93		
Relative - -	65, 93		